



P
R
O
J
E
C
T

M
A
N
U
A
L

05.23.2016

Community Center

GALLATIN VALLEY YMCA

Construction Documents

Volume 1 of 1 | Divisions 1-28

OWNER
YMCA
514 South 23rd
Bozeman, MT 59715

ARCHITECT/ENGINEER
CTA, Inc.
411 E Main St., Suite 101
Bozeman, MT 59715
406.556.7100

CONSTRUCTION MANAGER
Langlas & Associates
1019 East Main St., Suite 101
Bozeman, MT 59715

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PROJECT MANUAL - Volume I

Gallatin Valley YMCA

Bidding & Contract Requirements Division 1 General Conditions

LEGAL & PROCEDURAL REQUIREMENTS

Invitation to Bid

Instruction to Bidders

Performance Bond - AIA Document A312-2010

Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Construction Manager as Constructor –
AIA Document A133-2009

Subcontractor Agreement

General Conditions of the Contract for Construction – AIA Document A201-2007

List of Contract Forms for Subcontract Administration

Subcontractor Insurance Requirements

Contract Modification Procedures for Modification of Subcontract Agreement

Division 1 - General Requirements

Architect Requirements for Project

011000 – Summary

012500 – Substitution Procedures

013300 – Submittal Procedures

014000 – Quality Requirements

015000 – Temporary Facilities and Controls

017700 – Closeout Procedures

017823 – Operation and Maintenance Data

017839 – Project Record Documents

INVITATION FOR BIDS
Gallatin Valley YMCA
514 South 23rd
Bozeman, MT, 59715

RECEIPT OF PROPOSALS

Sealed bids will be received by Gallatin Valley YMCA and Langlas and Associates at 1019 E. Main St. Suite 101 Bozeman, MT 59715 no later than **2 pm on Thursday, June 9, 2016**. The bids will be reviewed by Langlas and Associates and YMCA in accordance with the Specifications and the Contract Documents prepared by CTA Architects/Engineer.

A pre-bid walkthrough of the project will be held at 11:00 AM on Wednesday, June 1, 2016 at the project site, located at the Northwest corner of the intersection of East Baxter Lane and Love Lane. All bidding sub-contractors are strongly encouraged to attend. Bids shall be submitted on the form provided with the Contract Documents and in accordance with the "Instructions to Bidders" in the Contract Documents.

OBTAINING CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

On Monday, May 23rd, 2016, bidding documents will be on file at Montana plans exchanges as listed in the "INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS" and physical sets may be obtained on May 19th, 2016, at Langlas and Associates office located at 1019 E. Main Street Suite 101, Bozeman, MT (406) 585-3420 upon deposit of \$100.00 per set. Plans are also available at www.langlas.com. The password can be obtained by contacting Langlas. Please ask for Matt Drake or Roger Davis for plan information.

Documents remain the property of the Architect and must be returned. Full refund of deposit will be made for complete sets that are returned in acceptable condition: without notes, marks, or mutilations, and within 15 calendar days after the opening of proposals. Plan holders that do not submit a proposal will forfeit their deposit.

PROPOSAL GUARANTEE

Bid Package Bids do not need to be accompanied by bid security. A performance and payment bond may be required before contract award. Please fill out the bid form correctly to include the additional amount for a performance and payment bond. If the Proposal is accepted, the Bidder may be asked to execute the Contract and fill acceptable Performance and Labor & Material Payment Bonds no later than ten (10) days after the Award of the Contract.

OWNER RIGHTS RESERVED

The YMCA Board of Directors, hereinafter called the Owner, reserve the right to reject any or all proposals and to waive any formality or technicality in any proposal in the interest of the Owner.

END OF INVITATION FOR BIDS

Instructions to Bidders

All Bidders interested in supplying product for, and/or performing work on the Gallatin Valley YMCA Project located in Bozeman, Montana, shall be subject to the requirements contained within the collective Bid Documents, which are outlined below.

1. Bid Addenda, if any.
2. Instructions to Bidders
3. General Requirements
4. Individually Numbered Bid Package Scopes, Instruction to Bidders, Bid Form, and General Requirements
5. Specifications prepared by CTA Group, dated 05/23/2016
6. Plan Drawings, prepared by CTA Group, dated 05/23/2016

The designation of responsibility in the scopes of work takes precedence over the designation of responsibility on the drawings or specifications. If any conflict exists between these documents, precedence shall be determined by the order in which they are listed above. For example, if a conflict exists between the Plans and Specifications, Bidder is to follow the Specifications and include such requirements in his/her bid, unless requirements are altered by subsequent Bid Addenda issued during the bidding process.

Complete Bid Documents may be obtained at the Bozeman Builders Exchange:

Langlas & Associates
1019 E. Main St. Suite 101
Bozeman, MT 59715

Complete Bid Documents may be viewed at the following locations:

Billings, MT Plans Exchange
406-652-1311

Helena, MT Plans Exchange
406-442-4162

Bozeman, MT Plans Exchange
406-586-7653

Kalispell, MT Plans Exchange
406-755-5888

Butte, MT Plans Exchange
406-782-5433

Missoula, MT Plans Exchange
406-549-5002

Great Falls, MT Plans Exchange
406-453-2513

Bozeman Builders Exchange
1105 Reeves Rd. W.
Bozeman, MT 59718
406-586-7653

A \$100 deposit will be required to obtain each full set of Bid Documents. Deposit is 100% refundable, provided that all documents are returned within ten (10) days after the bid opening in re-usable condition, including all addenda.

During the bidding phase, all questions concerning the project, Bid Documents, bidding process, scope related items, plan discrepancies, pre-bid Requests for Information, product substitutions, etc. shall be directed to the Construction Manager designated. Do not contact the Design Team with questions during the bid process for any reason.

Langlas & Associates
Roger Davis, Senior Project Manager
1019 East Main Street, Suite #101
Bozeman, MT 59715
Ph. 406-585-3420 Fax 406-585-4110
E-mail: rdavis@langlas.com

Bidders shall submit all questions to Construction Manager in writing via fax or email. Questions will be answered in a timely manner, and may be used to generate Bid Addenda for distribution to all Bidders at the discretion of the Construction Manager, Owner and Design Team. Oral, telephonic, or other form of communication other than a formal Bid Addenda shall not be construed as to alter the Bid Documents.

Bidders shall review all documents carefully and completely before making their bids. **A Pre-Bid Meeting has been scheduled for June 1st at 11:00 am** at the project site (Intersection E. Baxter Lane and Love Lane) to review project requirements and become familiar with the site. Attendance is strongly encouraged, but not mandatory for all trades. Site, mechanical, plumbing, fire sprinkler and electrical trades in particular are strongly encouraged to attend. Meeting agenda will include a review of the Bid Documents, bidding requirements and opportunity to discuss project details with the Construction Manager.

Sealed bids for all scopes of work on this project shall be submitted on the Bid Form(s) provided within this package and are due no later than June 9th at 2 PM MST at 1019 E. Main Street, Suite 101, Bozeman, MT, 59715. Bids shall be delivered by U.S. Mail, commercial carrier, or by hand to the address shown above and shall be clearly marked as follows:

Bidders Name and Address
Project: Gallatin Valley YMCA
Address: Langlas & Associates
C/O Roger Davis
1019 East Main St., Suite 101
Bozeman, MT 59715

Bid Date: {insert bid date according to this publication or subsequent addendum}
Bid Package: {insert applicable Bid Package Number(s)}

Bids submitted on any form other than the one(s) provided within this package will be rejected.

Faxed bids will not be accepted. Faxed modifications to previously received sealed bids are acceptable, may be sent to (406) 585-4110, and shall clearly state the same information as shown above, in addition to indicating Bidders additive or deductive modification to the previously submitted bid. Do not indicate total bid amount on faxed modifications. Faxed modifications need to be in 15 minutes prior to bid time. Bidders are responsible for receipt of fax and ensure fax modification is received and accepted.

Bids shall remain valid for a period of sixty (60) days following the Bid Date and may not be revoked during this time.

Bids will be publicly opened and read aloud in the presence of the Construction Manager, Owner, and Architect. Tabulated bid results will be available as soon as possible and will be posted at the office of the Construction Manager.

Bids will be evaluated on the basis of the information requested on the Bid Form(s) as well as a post-bid scope and qualifications review by the Construction Manager following tabulation of the bid results. Construction Manager shall make recommendations to the Owner whether or not to accept bids from the apparent low bidders for each bid package depending upon Construction Manager's findings during the qualification process. In the event that Construction Manager recommends against accepting an apparent low bid based on substantiated information and/or Owner elects not to accept such bid, the second bidder will be contacted for scope and qualification review. Such process shall continue until a qualified subcontractor/supplier is recommended by Construction Manager and/or accepted by Owner.

The CM and Owner may make such investigations as they deem necessary to determine the ability of the Bidder to perform the work, and the Bidder shall furnish all such information and data for this purpose as may be requested. The CM and the Owner reserve the right to reject any proposal if the evidence submitted by, or the investigation of, such Bidder fails to satisfy the CM and/or the Owner that such Bidder is properly qualified to carry out the obligations of the Subcontract and complete the work contemplated therein.

The CM and the Owner reserve the right in awarding subcontracts to consider the competency, responsibility, and suitability of the Bidder, as well as the amount of the proposals.

The CM and the Owner also reserve the right to reject any or all proposals, or waive any irregularities or informalities in the proposals received.

The CM will designate a set of documents as the record documents (as-built drawings) to be kept on-site. Any changes in work that deviate from the Contract Documents will be expected to be recorded on this set of Documents by the Subcontractor responsible for the scope of work affected. Any changes that the Subcontractor makes that vary from the Contract Documents shall be recorded within a Seventy-two (72) hour period after the change occurs in the field, by the Subcontractor, on the above mentioned Record Documents. The Record Documents will be reviewed weekly by the CM for compliance to this Article. If Documents are not being kept up to date, CM reserves the right to withhold progress payments and/or final payment to the Subcontractor, until the change(s) is (are) recorded in the Record Set of Documents.

The CM shall promptly pay each Subcontractor/Supplier, upon receipt of payment from the Owner, out of the amount paid to the CM on account of such Subcontractor's/Supplier's work, the amount to which said Subcontractor/Supplier is entitled. The CM requires each Subcontractor/Supplier to make prompt payments to its Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner. Joint check agreements may be used and can be accommodated by the CM. Progress and final payment to the Subcontractor/Supplier will only be processed upon receipt of a properly executed pay request from the Subcontractor/Supplier, on the CM's "Subcontractor's request for payment, certificate and interim waiver of claim and lien" form (Attached). This pay request must be received by the CM on or before the 25th of the month. Applications received after the 25th of the month will be held unprocessed until the following pay period.

Prior to commencing work, Subcontractor shall furnish and thereafter maintain certificates of insurance in accordance with the requirements presented in specification section 00 7100 Subcontractor Bonds and Insurance. Certificates of insurance and the policies represented thereby shall not be cancelled or modified until thirty (30) days after written notice has been given to CM of such cancellation or modification. Required coverage's shall be maintained without interruption from the date the Subcontractor commences work on the Project until no sooner than the date of the Subcontractor's receipt of final payment.

END OF SECTION

DRAFT AIA[®] Document A312[™] - 2010

Performance Bond

CONTRACTOR:
(Name, legal status and address)

« »
« »

SURETY:
(Name, legal status and principal
place of business)

« »
« »

OWNER:
(Name, legal status and address)

« »
« »

CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

Date: « »
Amount: \$ « »

Description:
(Name and location)

« sample 312 »
« »

BOND

Date:
(Not earlier than Construction Contract Date)

« »

Amount: \$ « »

Modifications to this Bond: None See Section 16

CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL
Company: (Corporate Seal)

SURETY
Company: (Corporate Seal)

Signature:
Name and « »
Title:

Signature:
Name and « »
Title:

(Any additional signatures appear on the last page of this Performance Bond.)

(FOR INFORMATION ONLY — Name, address and telephone)

AGENT or BROKER:

« »
« »
« »

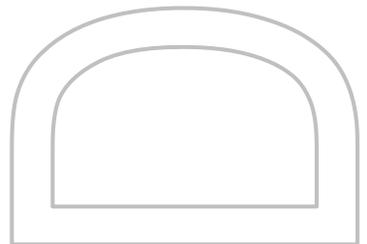
OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE:
(Architect, Engineer or other party:)

« »
« »
« »
« »
« »
« »

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:
The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.



ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA[®] Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

§ 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner for the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.

§ 2 If the Contractor performs the Construction Contract, the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond, except when applicable to participate in a conference as provided in Section 3.

§ 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise after

- .1 the Owner first provides notice to the Contractor and the Surety that the Owner is considering declaring a Contractor Default. Such notice shall indicate whether the Owner is requesting a conference among the Owner, Contractor and Surety to discuss the Contractor's performance. If the Owner does not request a conference, the Surety may, within five (5) business days after receipt of the Owner's notice, request such a conference. If the Surety timely requests a conference, the Owner shall attend. Unless the Owner agrees otherwise, any conference requested under this Section 3.1 shall be held within ten (10) business days of the Surety's receipt of the Owner's notice. If the Owner, the Contractor and the Surety agree, the Contractor shall be allowed a reasonable time to perform the Construction Contract, but such an agreement shall not waive the Owner's right, if any, subsequently to declare a Contractor Default;
- .2 the Owner declares a Contractor Default, terminates the Construction Contract and notifies the Surety; and
- .3 the Owner has agreed to pay the Balance of the Contract Price in accordance with the terms of the Construction Contract to the Surety or to a contractor selected to perform the Construction Contract.

§ 4 Failure on the part of the Owner to comply with the notice requirement in Section 3.1 shall not constitute a failure to comply with a condition precedent to the Surety's obligations, or release the Surety from its obligations, except to the extent the Surety demonstrates actual prejudice.

§ 5 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions of Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take one of the following actions:

§ 5.1 Arrange for the Contractor, with the consent of the Owner, to perform and complete the Construction Contract;

§ 5.2 Undertake to perform and complete the Construction Contract itself, through its agents or independent contractors;

§ 5.3 Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the Owner for a contract for performance and completion of the Construction Contract, arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the Owner and a contractor selected with the Owner's concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the bonds issued on the Construction Contract, and pay to the Owner the amount of damages as described in Section 7 in excess of the Balance of the Contract Price incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor Default; or

§ 5.4 Waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion, or obtain a new contractor and with reasonable promptness under the circumstances:

- .1 After investigation, determine the amount for which it may be liable to the Owner and, as soon as practicable after the amount is determined, make payment to the Owner; or
- .2 Deny liability in whole or in part and notify the Owner, citing the reasons for denial.

§ 6 If the Surety does not proceed as provided in Section 5 with reasonable promptness, the Surety shall be deemed to be in default on this Bond seven days after receipt of an additional written notice from the Owner to the Surety demanding that the Surety perform its obligations under this Bond, and the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner. If the Surety proceeds as provided in Section 5.4, and the Owner refuses the payment or the Surety has denied liability, in whole or in part, without further notice the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner.

§ 7 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.2 or 5.3, then the responsibilities of the Surety to the Owner shall not be greater than those of the Contractor under the Construction Contract, and the responsibilities of the Owner to the Surety shall not be greater than those of the Owner under the Construction Contract. Subject to the commitment by the Owner to pay the Balance of the Contract Price, the Surety is obligated, without duplication, for

- .1 the responsibilities of the Contractor for correction of defective work and completion of the Construction Contract;
- .2 additional legal, design professional and delay costs resulting from the Contractor's Default, and resulting from the actions or failure to act of the Surety under Section 5; and
- .3 liquidated damages, or if no liquidated damages are specified in the Construction Contract, actual damages caused by delayed performance or non-performance of the Contractor.

§ 8 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.3 or 5.4, the Surety's liability is limited to the amount of this Bond.

§ 9 The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract, and the Balance of the Contract Price shall not be reduced or set off on account of any such unrelated obligations. No right of action shall accrue on this Bond to any person or entity other than the Owner or its heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.

§ 10 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.

§ 11 Any proceeding, legal or equitable, under this Bond may be instituted in any court of competent jurisdiction in the location in which the work or part of the work is located and shall be instituted within two years after a declaration of Contractor Default or within two years after the Contractor ceased working or within two years after the Surety refuses or fails to perform its obligations under this Bond, whichever occurs first. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.

§ 12 Notice to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears.

§ 13 When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

§ 14 Definitions

§ 14.1 Balance of the Contract Price. The total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract after all proper adjustments have been made, including allowance to the Contractor of any amounts received or to be received by the Owner in settlement of insurance or other claims for damages to which the Contractor is entitled, reduced by all valid and proper payments made to or on behalf of the Contractor under the Construction Contract.

§ 14.2 Construction Contract. The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

§ 14.3 Contractor Default. Failure of the Contractor, which has not been remedied or waived, to perform or otherwise to comply with a material term of the Construction Contract.

§ 14.4 Owner Default. Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.

§ 14.5 Contract Documents. All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

§ 15 If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

§ 16 Modifications to this bond are as follows:

« »

(Space is provided below for additional signatures of added parties, other than those appearing on the cover page.)

CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL	SURETY
Company: _____ (Corporate Seal)	Company: _____ (Corporate Seal)
Signature: _____	Signature: _____
Name and Title: « »« »	Name and Title: « »« »
Address: « »	Address: « »

W
A
R
R

DRAFT AIA® Document A133™ - 2009

Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Construction Manager as Constructor where the basis of payment is the Cost of the Work Plus a Fee with a Guaranteed Maximum Price

AGREEMENT made as of the « » day of « » in the year « »
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

BETWEEN the Owner:
(Name, legal status and address)

« »
« »

and the Construction Manager:
(Name, legal status and address)

« »
« »

for the following Project:
(Name and address or location)

«Sample 133 2009 replaces A121»
« »

The Architect:
(Name, legal status and address)

« »
« »

The Owner's Designated Representative:
(Name, address and other information)

« »
« »
« »
« »
« »
« »

The Construction Manager's Designated Representative:
(Name, address and other information)

« »
« »
« »
« »
« »
« »

The Architect's Designated Representative:

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

AIA Document A201™-2007, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

(Name, address and other information)

<< >>
<< >>
<< >>
<< >>
<< >>
<< >>

The Owner and Construction Manager agree as follows.



TABLE OF ARTICLES

1	GENERAL PROVISIONS
2	CONSTRUCTION MANAGER'S RESPONSIBILITIES
3	OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES
4	COMPENSATION AND PAYMENTS FOR PRECONSTRUCTION PHASE SERVICES
5	COMPENSATION FOR CONSTRUCTION PHASE SERVICES
6	COST OF THE WORK FOR CONSTRUCTION PHASE
7	PAYMENTS FOR CONSTRUCTION PHASE SERVICES
8	INSURANCE AND BONDS
9	DISPUTE RESOLUTION
10	TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION
11	MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
12	SCOPE OF THE AGREEMENT

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to the execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. Upon the Owner's acceptance of the Construction Manager's Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal, the Contract Documents will also include the documents described in Section 2.2.3 and identified in the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment and revisions prepared by the Architect and furnished by the Owner as described in Section 2.2.8. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. If anything in the other Contract Documents, other than a Modification, is inconsistent with this Agreement, this Agreement shall govern.

§ 1.2 Relationship of the Parties

The Construction Manager accepts the relationship of trust and confidence established by this Agreement and covenants with the Owner to cooperate with the Architect and exercise the Construction Manager's skill and judgment in furthering the interests of the Owner; to furnish efficient construction administration, management services and supervision; to furnish at all times an adequate supply of workers and materials; and to perform the Work in an expeditious and economical manner consistent with the Owner's interests. The Owner agrees to furnish or approve, in a timely manner, information required by the Construction Manager and to make payments to the Construction Manager in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 1.3 General Conditions

For the Preconstruction Phase, AIA Document A201™-2007, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, shall apply only as specifically provided in this Agreement. For the Construction Phase, the general conditions of the contract shall be as set forth in A201-2007, which document is incorporated herein by reference. The term "Contractor" as used in A201-2007 shall mean the Construction Manager.

ARTICLE 2 CONSTRUCTION MANAGER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

The Construction Manager's Preconstruction Phase responsibilities are set forth in Sections 2.1 and 2.2. The Construction Manager's Construction Phase responsibilities are set forth in Section 2.3. The Owner and

Construction Manager may agree, in consultation with the Architect, for the Construction Phase to commence prior to completion of the Preconstruction Phase, in which case, both phases will proceed concurrently. The Construction Manager shall identify a representative authorized to act on behalf of the Construction Manager with respect to the Project.

§ 2.1 Preconstruction Phase

§ 2.1.1 The Construction Manager shall provide a preliminary evaluation of the Owner's program, schedule and construction budget requirements, each in terms of the other.

§ 2.1.2 Consultation

The Construction Manager shall schedule and conduct meetings with the Architect and Owner to discuss such matters as procedures, progress, coordination, and scheduling of the Work. The Construction Manager shall advise the Owner and the Architect on proposed site use and improvements, selection of materials, and building systems and equipment. The Construction Manager shall also provide recommendations consistent with the Project requirements to the Owner and Architect on constructability; availability of materials and labor; time requirements for procurement, installation and construction; and factors related to construction cost including, but not limited to, costs of alternative designs or materials, preliminary budgets, life-cycle data, and possible cost reductions.

§ 2.1.3 When Project requirements in Section 3.1.1 have been sufficiently identified, the Construction Manager shall prepare and periodically update a Project schedule for the Architect's review and the Owner's acceptance. The Construction Manager shall obtain the Architect's approval for the portion of the Project schedule relating to the performance of the Architect's services. The Project schedule shall coordinate and integrate the Construction Manager's services, the Architect's services, other Owner consultants' services, and the Owner's responsibilities and identify items that could affect the Project's timely completion. The updated Project schedule shall include the following: submission of the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal; components of the Work; times of commencement and completion required of each Subcontractor; ordering and delivery of products, including those that must be ordered well in advance of construction; and the occupancy requirements of the Owner.

§ 2.1.4 Phased Construction

The Construction Manager shall provide recommendations with regard to accelerated or fast-track scheduling, procurement, or phased construction. The Construction Manager shall take into consideration cost reductions, cost information, constructability, provisions for temporary facilities and procurement and construction scheduling issues.

§ 2.1.5 Preliminary Cost Estimates

§ 2.1.5.1 Based on the preliminary design and other design criteria prepared by the Architect, the Construction Manager shall prepare preliminary estimates of the Cost of the Work or the cost of program requirements using area, volume or similar conceptual estimating techniques for the Architect's review and Owner's approval. If the Architect or Construction Manager suggests alternative materials and systems, the Construction Manager shall provide cost evaluations of those alternative materials and systems.

§ 2.1.5.2 As the Architect progresses with the preparation of the Schematic Design, Design Development and Construction Documents, the Construction Manager shall prepare and update, at appropriate intervals agreed to by the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect, estimates of the Cost of the Work of increasing detail and refinement and allowing for the further development of the design until such time as the Owner and Construction Manager agree on a Guaranteed Maximum Price for the Work. Such estimates shall be provided for the Architect's review and the Owner's approval. The Construction Manager shall inform the Owner and Architect when estimates of the Cost of the Work exceed the latest approved Project budget and make recommendations for corrective action.

§ 2.1.6 Subcontractors and Suppliers

The Construction Manager shall develop bidders' interest in the Project.

§ 2.1.7 The Construction Manager shall prepare, for the Architect's review and the Owner's acceptance, a procurement schedule for items that must be ordered well in advance of construction. The Construction Manager shall expedite and coordinate the ordering and delivery of materials that must be ordered well in advance of construction. If the Owner agrees to procure any items prior to the establishment of the Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Owner shall procure the items on terms and conditions acceptable to the Construction Manager. Upon the

establishment of the Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Owner shall assign all contracts for these items to the Construction Manager and the Construction Manager shall thereafter accept responsibility for them.

§ 2.1.8 Extent of Responsibility

The Construction Manager shall exercise reasonable care in preparing schedules and estimates. The Construction Manager, however, does not warrant or guarantee estimates and schedules except as may be included as part of the Guaranteed Maximum Price. The Construction Manager is not required to ascertain that the Drawings and Specifications are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Construction Manager shall promptly report to the Architect and Owner any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Construction Manager as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

§ 2.1.9 Notices and Compliance with Laws

The Construction Manager shall comply with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to its performance under this Contract, and with equal employment opportunity programs, and other programs as may be required by governmental and quasi governmental authorities for inclusion in the Contract Documents.

§ 2.2 Guaranteed Maximum Price Proposal and Contract Time

§ 2.2.1 At a time to be mutually agreed upon by the Owner and the Construction Manager and in consultation with the Architect, the Construction Manager shall prepare a Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal for the Owner's review and acceptance. The Guaranteed Maximum Price in the proposal shall be the sum of the Construction Manager's estimate of the Cost of the Work, including contingencies described in Section 2.2.4, and the Construction Manager's Fee.

§ 2.2.2 To the extent that the Drawings and Specifications are anticipated to require further development by the Architect, the Construction Manager shall provide in the Guaranteed Maximum Price for such further development consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable therefrom. Such further development does not include such things as changes in scope, systems, kinds and quality of materials, finishes or equipment, all of which, if required, shall be incorporated by Change Order.

§ 2.2.3 The Construction Manager shall include with the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal a written statement of its basis, which shall include the following:

- .1 A list of the Drawings and Specifications, including all Addenda thereto, and the Conditions of the Contract;
- .2 A list of the clarifications and assumptions made by the Construction Manager in the preparation of the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal, including assumptions under Section 2.2.2, to supplement the information provided by the Owner and contained in the Drawings and Specifications;
- .3 A statement of the proposed Guaranteed Maximum Price, including a statement of the estimated Cost of the Work organized by trade categories or systems, allowances, contingency, and the Construction Manager's Fee;
- .4 The anticipated date of Substantial Completion upon which the proposed Guaranteed Maximum Price is based; and
- .5 A date by which the Owner must accept the Guaranteed Maximum Price.

§ 2.2.4 In preparing the Construction Manager's Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal, the Construction Manager shall include its contingency for the Construction Manager's exclusive use to cover those costs considered reimbursable as the Cost of the Work but not included in a Change Order.

§ 2.2.5 The Construction Manager shall meet with the Owner and Architect to review the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal. In the event that the Owner and Architect discover any inconsistencies or inaccuracies in the information presented, they shall promptly notify the Construction Manager, who shall make appropriate adjustments to the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal, its basis, or both.

§ 2.2.6 If the Owner notifies the Construction Manager that the Owner has accepted the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal in writing before the date specified in the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal, the Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal shall be deemed effective without further acceptance from the Construction Manager. Following

acceptance of a Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Owner and Construction Manager shall execute the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment amending this Agreement, a copy of which the Owner shall provide to the Architect. The Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment shall set forth the agreed upon Guaranteed Maximum Price with the information and assumptions upon which it is based.

§ 2.2.7 The Construction Manager shall not incur any cost to be reimbursed as part of the Cost of the Work prior to the commencement of the Construction Phase, unless the Owner provides prior written authorization for such costs.

§ 2.2.8 The Owner shall authorize the Architect to provide the revisions to the Drawings and Specifications to incorporate the agreed-upon assumptions and clarifications contained in the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment. The Owner shall promptly furnish those revised Drawings and Specifications to the Construction Manager as they are revised. The Construction Manager shall notify the Owner and Architect of any inconsistencies between the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment and the revised Drawings and Specifications.

§ 2.2.9 The Construction Manager shall include in the Guaranteed Maximum Price all sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Construction Manager that are legally enacted, whether or not yet effective, at the time the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment is executed.

§ 2.3 Construction Phase

§ 2.3.1 General

§ 2.3.1.1 For purposes of Section 8.1.2 of A201–2007, the date of commencement of the Work shall mean the date of commencement of the Construction Phase.

§ 2.3.1.2 The Construction Phase shall commence upon the Owner's acceptance of the Construction Manager's Guaranteed Maximum Price proposal or the Owner's issuance of a Notice to Proceed, whichever occurs earlier.

§ 2.3.2 Administration

§ 2.3.2.1 Those portions of the Work that the Construction Manager does not customarily perform with the Construction Manager's own personnel shall be performed under subcontracts or by other appropriate agreements with the Construction Manager. The Owner may designate specific persons from whom, or entities from which, the Construction Manager shall obtain bids. The Construction Manager shall obtain bids from Subcontractors and from suppliers of materials or equipment fabricated especially for the Work and shall deliver such bids to the Architect. The Owner shall then determine, with the advice of the Construction Manager and the Architect, which bids will be accepted. The Construction Manager shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Construction Manager has reasonable objection.

§ 2.3.2.2 If the Guaranteed Maximum Price has been established and when a specific bidder (1) is recommended to the Owner by the Construction Manager, (2) is qualified to perform that portion of the Work, and (3) has submitted a bid that conforms to the requirements of the Contract Documents without reservations or exceptions, but the Owner requires that another bid be accepted, then the Construction Manager may require that a Change Order be issued to adjust the Contract Time and the Guaranteed Maximum Price by the difference between the bid of the person or entity recommended to the Owner by the Construction Manager and the amount and time requirement of the subcontract or other agreement actually signed with the person or entity designated by the Owner.

§ 2.3.2.3 Subcontracts or other agreements shall conform to the applicable payment provisions of this Agreement, and shall not be awarded on the basis of cost plus a fee without the prior consent of the Owner. If the Subcontract is awarded on a cost-plus a fee basis, the Construction Manager shall provide in the Subcontract for the Owner to receive the same audit rights with regard to the Subcontractor as the Owner receives with regard to the Construction Manager in Section 6.11 below.

§ 2.3.2.4 If the Construction Manager recommends a specific bidder that may be considered a "related party" according to Section 6.10, then the Construction Manager shall promptly notify the Owner in writing of such relationship and notify the Owner of the specific nature of the contemplated transaction, according to Section 6.10.2.

§ 2.3.2.5 The Construction Manager shall schedule and conduct meetings to discuss such matters as procedures, progress, coordination, scheduling, and status of the Work. The Construction Manager shall prepare and promptly distribute minutes to the Owner and Architect.

§ 2.3.2.6 Upon the execution of the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment, the Construction Manager shall prepare and submit to the Owner and Architect a construction schedule for the Work and submittal schedule in accordance with Section 3.10 of A201–2007.

§ 2.3.2.7 The Construction Manager shall record the progress of the Project. On a monthly basis, or otherwise as agreed to by the Owner, the Construction Manager shall submit written progress reports to the Owner and Architect, showing percentages of completion and other information required by the Owner. The Construction Manager shall also keep, and make available to the Owner and Architect, a daily log containing a record for each day of weather, portions of the Work in progress, number of workers on site, identification of equipment on site, problems that might affect progress of the work, accidents, injuries, and other information required by the Owner.

§ 2.3.2.8 The Construction Manager shall develop a system of cost control for the Work, including regular monitoring of actual costs for activities in progress and estimates for uncompleted tasks and proposed changes. The Construction Manager shall identify variances between actual and estimated costs and report the variances to the Owner and Architect and shall provide this information in its monthly reports to the Owner and Architect, in accordance with Section 2.3.2.7 above.

§ 2.4 Professional Services

Section 3.12.10 of A201–2007 shall apply to both the Preconstruction and Construction Phases.

§ 2.5 Hazardous Materials

Section 10.3 of A201–2007 shall apply to both the Preconstruction and Construction Phases.

ARTICLE 3 OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

§ 3.1 Information and Services Required of the Owner

§ 3.1.1 The Owner shall provide information with reasonable promptness, regarding requirements for and limitations on the Project, including a written program which shall set forth the Owner's objectives, constraints, and criteria, including schedule, space requirements and relationships, flexibility and expandability, special equipment, systems sustainability and site requirements.

§ 3.1.2 Prior to the execution of the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment, the Construction Manager may request in writing that the Owner provide reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. Thereafter, the Construction Manager may only request such evidence if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Construction Manager as the Contract Documents require, (2) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum, or (3) the Construction Manager identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due. The Owner shall furnish such evidence as a condition precedent to commencement or continuation of the Work or the portion of the Work affected by a material change. After the Owner furnishes the evidence, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Construction Manager and Architect.

§ 3.1.3 The Owner shall establish and periodically update the Owner's budget for the Project, including (1) the budget for the Cost of the Work as defined in Section 6.1.1, (2) the Owner's other costs, and (3) reasonable contingencies related to all of these costs. If the Owner significantly increases or decreases the Owner's budget for the Cost of the Work, the Owner shall notify the Construction Manager and Architect. The Owner and the Architect, in consultation with the Construction Manager, shall thereafter agree to a corresponding change in the Project's scope and quality.

§ 3.1.4 Structural and Environmental Tests, Surveys and Reports. During the Preconstruction Phase, the Owner shall furnish the following information or services with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Construction Manager's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Construction Manager's written request for such information or services. The Construction Manager shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information and services furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 3.1.4.1 The Owner shall furnish tests, inspections and reports required by law and as otherwise agreed to by the parties, such as structural, mechanical, and chemical tests, tests for air and water pollution, and tests for hazardous materials.

§ 3.1.4.2 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The surveys and legal information shall include, as applicable, grades and lines of streets, alleys, pavements and adjoining property and structures; designated wetlands; adjacent drainage; rights-of-way, restrictions, easements, encroachments, zoning, deed restrictions, boundaries and contours of the site; locations, dimensions and necessary data with respect to existing buildings, other improvements and trees; and information concerning available utility services and lines, both public and private, above and below grade, including inverts and depths. All the information on the survey shall be referenced to a Project benchmark.

§ 3.1.4.3 The Owner, when such services are requested, shall furnish services of geotechnical engineers, which may include but are not limited to test borings, test pits, determinations of soil bearing values, percolation tests, evaluations of hazardous materials, seismic evaluation, ground corrosion tests and resistivity tests, including necessary operations for anticipating subsoil conditions, with written reports and appropriate recommendations.

§ 3.1.4.4 During the Construction Phase, the Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Construction Manager's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Construction Manager's written request for such information or services.

§ 3.2 Owner's Designated Representative

The Owner shall identify a representative authorized to act on behalf of the Owner with respect to the Project. The Owner's representative shall render decisions promptly and furnish information expeditiously, so as to avoid unreasonable delay in the services or Work of the Construction Manager. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1 of A201-2007, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

§ 3.2.1 Legal Requirements. The Owner shall furnish all legal, insurance and accounting services, including auditing services, that may be reasonably necessary at any time for the Project to meet the Owner's needs and interests.

§ 3.3 Architect

The Owner shall retain an Architect to provide services, duties and responsibilities as described in AIA Document B103™-2007, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Architect, including any additional services requested by the Construction Manager that are necessary for the Preconstruction and Construction Phase services under this Agreement. The Owner shall provide the Construction Manager a copy of the executed agreement between the Owner and the Architect, and any further modifications to the agreement.

ARTICLE 4 COMPENSATION AND PAYMENTS FOR PRECONSTRUCTION PHASE SERVICES

§ 4.1 Compensation

§ 4.1.1 For the Construction Manager's Preconstruction Phase services, the Owner shall compensate the Construction Manager as follows:

§ 4.1.2 For the Construction Manager's Preconstruction Phase services described in Sections 2.1 and 2.2:
(Insert amount of, or basis for, compensation and include a list of reimbursable cost items, as applicable.)

« »

§ 4.1.3 If the Preconstruction Phase services covered by this Agreement have not been completed within « » (« ») months of the date of this Agreement, through no fault of the Construction Manager, the Construction Manager's compensation for Preconstruction Phase services shall be equitably adjusted.

§ 4.1.4 Compensation based on Direct Personnel Expense includes the direct salaries of the Construction Manager's personnel providing Preconstruction Phase services on the Project and the Construction Manager's costs for the mandatory and customary contributions and benefits related thereto, such as employment taxes and other statutory employee benefits, insurance, sick leave, holidays, vacations, employee retirement plans and similar contributions.

§ 4.2 Payments

§ 4.2.1 Unless otherwise agreed, payments for services shall be made monthly in proportion to services performed.

§ 4.2.2 Payments are due and payable upon presentation of the Construction Manager's invoice. Amounts unpaid « » (« ») days after the invoice date shall bear interest at the rate entered below, or in the absence thereof at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the principal place of business of the Construction Manager.
(Insert rate of monthly or annual interest agreed upon.)

« » % « »

ARTICLE 5 COMPENSATION FOR CONSTRUCTION PHASE SERVICES

§ 5.1 For the Construction Manager's performance of the Work as described in Section 2.3, the Owner shall pay the Construction Manager the Contract Sum in current funds. The Contract Sum is the Cost of the Work as defined in Section 6.1.1 plus the Construction Manager's Fee.

§ 5.1.1 The Construction Manager's Fee:

(State a lump sum, percentage of Cost of the Work or other provision for determining the Construction Manager's Fee.)

« »

§ 5.1.2 The method of adjustment of the Construction Manager's Fee for changes in the Work:

« »

§ 5.1.3 Limitations, if any, on a Subcontractor's overhead and profit for increases in the cost of its portion of the Work:

« »

§ 5.1.4 Rental rates for Construction Manager-owned equipment shall not exceed « » percent (« » %) of the standard rate paid at the place of the Project.

§ 5.1.5 Unit prices, if any:

(Identify and state the unit price; state the quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)

Item	Units and Limitations	Price per Unit (\$0.00)
------	-----------------------	-------------------------

§ 5.2 Guaranteed Maximum Price

§ 5.2.1 The Construction Manager guarantees that the Contract Sum shall not exceed the Guaranteed Maximum Price set forth in the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment, as it is amended from time to time. To the extent the Cost of the Work exceeds the Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Construction Manager shall bear such costs in excess of the Guaranteed Maximum Price without reimbursement or additional compensation from the Owner.

(Insert specific provisions if the Construction Manager is to participate in any savings.)

« »

§ 5.2.2 The Guaranteed Maximum Price is subject to additions and deductions by Change Order as provided in the Contract Documents and the Date of Substantial Completion shall be subject to adjustment as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 5.3 Changes in the Work

§ 5.3.1 The Owner may, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions. The Owner shall issue such changes in writing. The Architect may make minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4 of AIA Document A201-2007, General

Conditions of the Contract for Construction. The Construction Manager shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment in the Contract Time as a result of changes in the Work.

§ 5.3.2 Adjustments to the Guaranteed Maximum Price on account of changes in the Work subsequent to the execution of the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment may be determined by any of the methods listed in Section 7.3.3 of AIA Document A201–2007, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

§ 5.3.3 In calculating adjustments to subcontracts (except those awarded with the Owner’s prior consent on the basis of cost plus a fee), the terms “cost” and “fee” as used in Section 7.3.3.3 of AIA Document A201–2007 and the term “costs” as used in Section 7.3.7 of AIA Document A201–2007 shall have the meanings assigned to them in AIA Document A201–2007 and shall not be modified by Sections 5.1 and 5.2, Sections 6.1 through 6.7, and Section 6.8 of this Agreement. Adjustments to subcontracts awarded with the Owner’s prior consent on the basis of cost plus a fee shall be calculated in accordance with the terms of those subcontracts.

§ 5.3.4 In calculating adjustments to the Guaranteed Maximum Price, the terms “cost” and “costs” as used in the above-referenced provisions of AIA Document A201–2007 shall mean the Cost of the Work as defined in Sections 6.1 to 6.7 of this Agreement and the term “fee” shall mean the Construction Manager’s Fee as defined in Section 5.1 of this Agreement.

§ 5.3.5 If no specific provision is made in Section 5.1.2 for adjustment of the Construction Manager’s Fee in the case of changes in the Work, or if the extent of such changes is such, in the aggregate, that application of the adjustment provisions of Section 5.1.2 will cause substantial inequity to the Owner or Construction Manager, the Construction Manager’s Fee shall be equitably adjusted on the same basis that was used to establish the Fee for the original Work, and the Guaranteed Maximum Price shall be adjusted accordingly.

ARTICLE 6 COST OF THE WORK FOR CONSTRUCTION PHASE

§ 6.1 Costs to Be Reimbursed

§ 6.1.1 The term Cost of the Work shall mean costs necessarily incurred by the Construction Manager in the proper performance of the Work. Such costs shall be at rates not higher than the standard paid at the place of the Project except with prior consent of the Owner. The Cost of the Work shall include only the items set forth in Sections 6.1 through 6.7.

§ 6.1.2 Where any cost is subject to the Owner’s prior approval, the Construction Manager shall obtain this approval prior to incurring the cost. The parties shall endeavor to identify any such costs prior to executing Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment.

§ 6.2 Labor Costs

§ 6.2.1 Wages of construction workers directly employed by the Construction Manager to perform the construction of the Work at the site or, with the Owner’s prior approval, at off-site workshops.

§ 6.2.2 Wages or salaries of the Construction Manager’s supervisory and administrative personnel when stationed at the site with the Owner’s prior approval.

(If it is intended that the wages or salaries of certain personnel stationed at the Construction Manager’s principal or other offices shall be included in the Cost of the Work, identify in Section 11.5, the personnel to be included, whether for all or only part of their time, and the rates at which their time will be charged to the Work.)

§ 6.2.3 Wages and salaries of the Construction Manager’s supervisory or administrative personnel engaged at factories, workshops or on the road, in expediting the production or transportation of materials or equipment required for the Work, but only for that portion of their time required for the Work.

§ 6.2.4 Costs paid or incurred by the Construction Manager for taxes, insurance, contributions, assessments and benefits required by law or collective bargaining agreements and, for personnel not covered by such agreements, customary benefits such as sick leave, medical and health benefits, holidays, vacations and pensions, provided such costs are based on wages and salaries included in the Cost of the Work under Sections 6.2.1 through 6.2.3.

§ 6.2.5 Bonuses, profit sharing, incentive compensation and any other discretionary payments paid to anyone hired by the Construction Manager or paid to any Subcontractor or vendor, with the Owner’s prior approval.

§ 6.3 Subcontract Costs

Payments made by the Construction Manager to Subcontractors in accordance with the requirements of the subcontracts.

§ 6.4 Costs of Materials and Equipment Incorporated in the Completed Construction

§ 6.4.1 Costs, including transportation and storage, of materials and equipment incorporated or to be incorporated in the completed construction.

§ 6.4.2 Costs of materials described in the preceding Section 6.4.1 in excess of those actually installed to allow for reasonable waste and spoilage. Unused excess materials, if any, shall become the Owner's property at the completion of the Work or, at the Owner's option, shall be sold by the Construction Manager. Any amounts realized from such sales shall be credited to the Owner as a deduction from the Cost of the Work.

§ 6.5 Costs of Other Materials and Equipment, Temporary Facilities and Related Items

§ 6.5.1 Costs of transportation, storage, installation, maintenance, dismantling and removal of materials, supplies, temporary facilities, machinery, equipment and hand tools not customarily owned by construction workers that are provided by the Construction Manager at the site and fully consumed in the performance of the Work. Costs of materials, supplies, temporary facilities, machinery, equipment and tools that are not fully consumed shall be based on the cost or value of the item at the time it is first used on the Project site less the value of the item when it is no longer used at the Project site. Costs for items not fully consumed by the Construction Manager shall mean fair market value.

§ 6.5.2 Rental charges for temporary facilities, machinery, equipment and hand tools not customarily owned by construction workers that are provided by the Construction Manager at the site and costs of transportation, installation, minor repairs, dismantling and removal. The total rental cost of any Construction Manager-owned item may not exceed the purchase price of any comparable item. Rates of Construction Manager-owned equipment and quantities of equipment shall be subject to the Owner's prior approval.

§ 6.5.3 Costs of removal of debris from the site of the Work and its proper and legal disposal.

§ 6.5.4 Costs of document reproductions, facsimile transmissions and long-distance telephone calls, postage and parcel delivery charges, telephone service at the site and reasonable petty cash expenses of the site office.

§ 6.5.5 That portion of the reasonable expenses of the Construction Manager's supervisory or administrative personnel incurred while traveling in discharge of duties connected with the Work.

§ 6.5.6 Costs of materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a mutually acceptable location, subject to the Owner's prior approval.

§ 6.6 Miscellaneous Costs

§ 6.6.1 Premiums for that portion of insurance and bonds required by the Contract Documents that can be directly attributed to this Contract. Self-insurance for either full or partial amounts of the coverages required by the Contract Documents, with the Owner's prior approval.

§ 6.6.2 Sales, use or similar taxes imposed by a governmental authority that are related to the Work and for which the Construction Manager is liable.

§ 6.6.3 Fees and assessments for the building permit and for other permits, licenses and inspections for which the Construction Manager is required by the Contract Documents to pay.

§ 6.6.4 Fees of laboratories for tests required by the Contract Documents, except those related to defective or nonconforming Work for which reimbursement is excluded by Section 13.5.3 of AIA Document A201-2007 or by other provisions of the Contract Documents, and which do not fall within the scope of Section 6.7.3.

§ 6.6.5 Royalties and license fees paid for the use of a particular design, process or product required by the Contract Documents; the cost of defending suits or claims for infringement of patent rights arising from such requirement of

the Contract Documents; and payments made in accordance with legal judgments against the Construction Manager resulting from such suits or claims and payments of settlements made with the Owner's consent. However, such costs of legal defenses, judgments and settlements shall not be included in the calculation of the Construction Manager's Fee or subject to the Guaranteed Maximum Price. If such royalties, fees and costs are excluded by the last sentence of Section 3.17 of AIA Document A201-2007 or other provisions of the Contract Documents, then they shall not be included in the Cost of the Work.

§ 6.6.6 Costs for electronic equipment and software, directly related to the Work with the Owner's prior approval.

§ 6.6.7 Deposits lost for causes other than the Construction Manager's negligence or failure to fulfill a specific responsibility in the Contract Documents.

§ 6.6.8 Legal, mediation and arbitration costs, including attorneys' fees, other than those arising from disputes between the Owner and Construction Manager, reasonably incurred by the Construction Manager after the execution of this Agreement in the performance of the Work and with the Owner's prior approval, which shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 6.6.9 Subject to the Owner's prior approval, expenses incurred in accordance with the Construction Manager's standard written personnel policy for relocation and temporary living allowances of the Construction Manager's personnel required for the Work.

§ 6.7 Other Costs and Emergencies

§ 6.7.1 Other costs incurred in the performance of the Work if, and to the extent, approved in advance in writing by the Owner.

§ 6.7.2 Costs incurred in taking action to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss in case of an emergency affecting the safety of persons and property, as provided in Section 10.4 of AIA Document A201-2007.

§ 6.7.3 Costs of repairing or correcting damaged or nonconforming Work executed by the Construction Manager, Subcontractors or suppliers, provided that such damaged or nonconforming Work was not caused by negligence or failure to fulfill a specific responsibility of the Construction Manager and only to the extent that the cost of repair or correction is not recovered by the Construction Manager from insurance, sureties, Subcontractors, suppliers, or others.

§ 6.7.4 The costs described in Sections 6.1 through 6.7 shall be included in the Cost of the Work, notwithstanding any provision of AIA Document A201-2007 or other Conditions of the Contract which may require the Construction Manager to pay such costs, unless such costs are excluded by the provisions of Section 6.8.

§ 6.8 Costs Not To Be Reimbursed

§ 6.8.1 The Cost of the Work shall not include the items listed below:

- .1 Salaries and other compensation of the Construction Manager's personnel stationed at the Construction Manager's principal office or offices other than the site office, except as specifically provided in Section 6.2, or as may be provided in Article 11;
- .2 Expenses of the Construction Manager's principal office and offices other than the site office;
- .3 Overhead and general expenses, except as may be expressly included in Sections 6.1 to 6.7;
- .4 The Construction Manager's capital expenses, including interest on the Construction Manager's capital employed for the Work;
- .5 Except as provided in Section 6.7.3 of this Agreement, costs due to the negligence or failure of the Construction Manager, Subcontractors and suppliers or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or for whose acts any of them may be liable to fulfill a specific responsibility of the Contract;
- .6 Any cost not specifically and expressly described in Sections 6.1 to 6.7;
- .7 Costs, other than costs included in Change Orders approved by the Owner, that would cause the Guaranteed Maximum Price to be exceeded; and
- .8 Costs for services incurred during the Preconstruction Phase.

§ 6.9 Discounts, Rebates and Refunds

§ 6.9.1 Cash discounts obtained on payments made by the Construction Manager shall accrue to the Owner if (1) before making the payment, the Construction Manager included them in an Application for Payment and received payment from the Owner, or (2) the Owner has deposited funds with the Construction Manager with which to make payments; otherwise, cash discounts shall accrue to the Construction Manager. Trade discounts, rebates, refunds and amounts received from sales of surplus materials and equipment shall accrue to the Owner, and the Construction Manager shall make provisions so that they can be obtained.

§ 6.9.2 Amounts that accrue to the Owner in accordance with the provisions of Section 6.9.1 shall be credited to the Owner as a deduction from the Cost of the Work.

§ 6.10 Related Party Transactions

§ 6.10.1 For purposes of Section 6.10, the term “related party” shall mean a parent, subsidiary, affiliate or other entity having common ownership or management with the Construction Manager; any entity in which any stockholder in, or management employee of, the Construction Manager owns any interest in excess of ten percent in the aggregate; or any person or entity which has the right to control the business or affairs of the Construction Manager. The term “related party” includes any member of the immediate family of any person identified above.

§ 6.10.2 If any of the costs to be reimbursed arise from a transaction between the Construction Manager and a related party, the Construction Manager shall notify the Owner of the specific nature of the contemplated transaction, including the identity of the related party and the anticipated cost to be incurred, before any such transaction is consummated or cost incurred. If the Owner, after such notification, authorizes the proposed transaction, then the cost incurred shall be included as a cost to be reimbursed, and the Construction Manager shall procure the Work, equipment, goods or service from the related party, as a Subcontractor, according to the terms of Sections 2.3.2.1, 2.3.2.2 and 2.3.2.3. If the Owner fails to authorize the transaction, the Construction Manager shall procure the Work, equipment, goods or service from some person or entity other than a related party according to the terms of Sections 2.3.2.1, 2.3.2.2 and 2.3.2.3.

§ 6.11 Accounting Records

The Construction Manager shall keep full and detailed records and accounts related to the cost of the Work and exercise such controls as may be necessary for proper financial management under this Contract and to substantiate all costs incurred. The accounting and control systems shall be satisfactory to the Owner. The Owner and the Owner’s auditors shall, during regular business hours and upon reasonable notice, be afforded access to, and shall be permitted to audit and copy, the Construction Manager’s records and accounts, including complete documentation supporting accounting entries, books, correspondence, instructions, drawings, receipts, subcontracts, Subcontractor’s proposals, purchase orders, vouchers, memoranda and other data relating to this Contract. The Construction Manager shall preserve these records for a period of three years after final payment, or for such longer period as may be required by law.

ARTICLE 7 PAYMENTS FOR CONSTRUCTION PHASE SERVICES

§ 7.1 Progress Payments

§ 7.1.1 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Construction Manager and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Construction Manager as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.2 The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month ending on the last day of the month, or as follows:

« »

§ 7.1.3 Provided that an Application for Payment is received by the Architect not later than the « » day of a month, the Owner shall make payment of the certified amount to the Construction Manager not later than the « » day of the « » month. If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment shall be made by the Owner not later than « » (« ») days after the Architect receives the Application for Payment.

(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)

§ 7.1.4 With each Application for Payment, the Construction Manager shall submit payrolls, petty cash accounts, receipted invoices or invoices with check vouchers attached, and any other evidence required by the Owner or Architect to demonstrate that cash disbursements already made by the Construction Manager on account of the Cost of the Work equal or exceed progress payments already received by the Construction Manager, less that portion of those payments attributable to the Construction Manager's Fee, plus payrolls for the period covered by the present Application for Payment.

§ 7.1.5 Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Construction Manager in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Guaranteed Maximum Price among the various portions of the Work, except that the Construction Manager's Fee shall be shown as a single separate item. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Construction Manager's Applications for Payment.

§ 7.1.6 Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment. The percentage of completion shall be the lesser of (1) the percentage of that portion of the Work which has actually been completed, or (2) the percentage obtained by dividing (a) the expense that has actually been incurred by the Construction Manager on account of that portion of the Work for which the Construction Manager has made or intends to make actual payment prior to the next Application for Payment by (b) the share of the Guaranteed Maximum Price allocated to that portion of the Work in the schedule of values.

§ 7.1.7 Subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:

- .1 Take that portion of the Guaranteed Maximum Price properly allocable to completed Work as determined by multiplying the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work by the share of the Guaranteed Maximum Price allocated to that portion of the Work in the schedule of values. Pending final determination of cost to the Owner of changes in the Work, amounts not in dispute shall be included as provided in Section 7.3.9 of AIA Document A201-2007;
- .2 Add that portion of the Guaranteed Maximum Price properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work, or if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing;
- .3 Add the Construction Manager's Fee, less retainage of « » percent (« » %). The Construction Manager's Fee shall be computed upon the Cost of the Work at the rate stated in Section 5.1 or, if the Construction Manager's Fee is stated as a fixed sum in that Section, shall be an amount that bears the same ratio to that fixed-sum fee as the Cost of the Work bears to a reasonable estimate of the probable Cost of the Work upon its completion;
- .4 Subtract retainage of « » percent (« » %) from that portion of the Work that the Construction Manager self-performs;
- .5 Subtract the aggregate of previous payments made by the Owner;
- .6 Subtract the shortfall, if any, indicated by the Construction Manager in the documentation required by Section 7.1.4 to substantiate prior Applications for Payment, or resulting from errors subsequently discovered by the Owner's auditors in such documentation; and
- .7 Subtract amounts, if any, for which the Architect has withheld or nullified a Certificate for Payment as provided in Section 9.5 of AIA Document A201-2007.

§ 7.1.8 The Owner and Construction Manager shall agree upon (1) a mutually acceptable procedure for review and approval of payments to Subcontractors and (2) the percentage of retainage held on Subcontracts, and the Construction Manager shall execute subcontracts in accordance with those agreements.

§ 7.1.9 Except with the Owner's prior approval, the Construction Manager shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

§ 7.1.10 In taking action on the Construction Manager's Applications for Payment, the Architect shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy and completeness of the information furnished by the Construction Manager and shall not be deemed to represent that the Architect has made a detailed examination, audit or arithmetic verification of the documentation submitted in accordance with Section 7.1.4 or other supporting data; that the Architect has made

exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections; or that the Architect has made examinations to ascertain how or for what purposes the Construction Manager has used amounts previously paid on account of the Contract. Such examinations, audits and verifications, if required by the Owner, will be performed by the Owner's auditors acting in the sole interest of the Owner.

§ 7.2 Final Payment

§ 7.2.1 Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be made by the Owner to the Construction Manager when

- .1 the Construction Manager has fully performed the Contract except for the Construction Manager's responsibility to correct Work as provided in Section 12.2.2 of AIA Document A201-2007, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment;
- .2 the Construction Manager has submitted a final accounting for the Cost of the Work and a final Application for Payment; and
- .3 a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect.

The Owner's final payment to the Construction Manager shall be made no later than 30 days after the issuance of the Architect's final Certificate for Payment, or as follows:

<< >>

§ 7.2.2 The Owner's auditors will review and report in writing on the Construction Manager's final accounting within 30 days after delivery of the final accounting to the Architect by the Construction Manager. Based upon such Cost of the Work as the Owner's auditors report to be substantiated by the Construction Manager's final accounting, and provided the other conditions of Section 7.2.1 have been met, the Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the written report of the Owner's auditors, either issue to the Owner a final Certificate for Payment with a copy to the Construction Manager, or notify the Construction Manager and Owner in writing of the Architect's reasons for withholding a certificate as provided in Section 9.5.1 of the AIA Document A201-2007. The time periods stated in this Section supersede those stated in Section 9.4.1 of the AIA Document A201-2007. The Architect is not responsible for verifying the accuracy of the Construction Manager's final accounting.

§ 7.2.3 If the Owner's auditors report the Cost of the Work as substantiated by the Construction Manager's final accounting to be less than claimed by the Construction Manager, the Construction Manager shall be entitled to request mediation of the disputed amount without seeking an initial decision pursuant to Section 15.2 of A201-2007. A request for mediation shall be made by the Construction Manager within 30 days after the Construction Manager's receipt of a copy of the Architect's final Certificate for Payment. Failure to request mediation within this 30-day period shall result in the substantiated amount reported by the Owner's auditors becoming binding on the Construction Manager. Pending a final resolution of the disputed amount, the Owner shall pay the Construction Manager the amount certified in the Architect's final Certificate for Payment.

§ 7.2.4 If, subsequent to final payment and at the Owner's request, the Construction Manager incurs costs described in Section 6.1.1 and not excluded by Section 6.8 to correct defective or nonconforming Work, the Owner shall reimburse the Construction Manager such costs and the Construction Manager's Fee applicable thereto on the same basis as if such costs had been incurred prior to final payment, but not in excess of the Guaranteed Maximum Price. If the Construction Manager has participated in savings as provided in Section 5.2.1, the amount of such savings shall be recalculated and appropriate credit given to the Owner in determining the net amount to be paid by the Owner to the Construction Manager.

ARTICLE 8 INSURANCE AND BONDS

For all phases of the Project, the Construction Manager and the Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance, and the Construction Manager shall provide bonds as set forth in Article 11 of AIA Document A201-2007.

(State bonding requirements, if any, and limits of liability for insurance required in Article 11 of AIA Document A201-2007.)

Type of Insurance or Bond

Limit of Liability or Bond Amount (\$0.00)

ARTICLE 9 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

§ 9.1 Any Claim between the Owner and Construction Manager shall be resolved in accordance with the provisions set forth in this Article 9 and Article 15 of A201–2007. However, for Claims arising from or relating to the Construction Manager’s Preconstruction Phase services, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation or binding dispute resolution, and Section 9.3 of this Agreement shall not apply.

§ 9.2 For any Claim subject to, but not resolved by mediation pursuant to Section 15.3 of AIA Document A201–2007, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:

(Check the appropriate box. If the Owner and Construction Manager do not select a method of binding dispute resolution below, or do not subsequently agree in writing to a binding dispute resolution method other than litigation, Claims will be resolved by litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction.)

Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201–2007

Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction

Other: *(Specify)*

§ 9.3 Initial Decision Maker

The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Section 15.2 of AIA Document A201–2007 for Claims arising from or relating to the Construction Manager’s Construction Phase services, unless the parties appoint below another individual, not a party to the Agreement, to serve as the Initial Decision Maker.

(If the parties mutually agree, insert the name, address and other contact information of the Initial Decision Maker, if other than the Architect.)

ARTICLE 10 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

§ 10.1 Termination Prior to Establishment of the Guaranteed Maximum Price

§ 10.1.1 Prior to the execution of the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment, the Owner may terminate this Agreement upon not less than seven days’ written notice to the Construction Manager for the Owner’s convenience and without cause, and the Construction Manager may terminate this Agreement, upon not less than seven days’ written notice to the Owner, for the reasons set forth in Section 14.1.1 of A201–2007.

§ 10.1.2 In the event of termination of this Agreement pursuant to Section 10.1.1, the Construction Manager shall be equitably compensated for Preconstruction Phase services performed prior to receipt of a notice of termination. In no event shall the Construction Manager’s compensation under this Section exceed the compensation set forth in Section 4.1.

§ 10.1.3 If the Owner terminates the Contract pursuant to Section 10.1.1 after the commencement of the Construction Phase but prior to the execution of the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment, the Owner shall pay to the Construction Manager an amount calculated as follows, which amount shall be in addition to any compensation paid to the Construction Manager under Section 10.1.2:

- .1 Take the Cost of the Work incurred by the Construction Manager to the date of termination;
- .2 Add the Construction Manager’s Fee computed upon the Cost of the Work to the date of termination at the rate stated in Section 5.1 or, if the Construction Manager’s Fee is stated as a fixed sum in that Section, an amount that bears the same ratio to that fixed-sum Fee as the Cost of the Work at the time of termination bears to a reasonable estimate of the probable Cost of the Work upon its completion; and
- .3 Subtract the aggregate of previous payments made by the Owner for Construction Phase services.

The Owner shall also pay the Construction Manager fair compensation, either by purchase or rental at the election of the Owner, for any equipment owned by the Construction Manager which the Owner elects to retain and which is not otherwise included in the Cost of the Work under Section 10.1.3.1. To the extent that the Owner elects to take legal assignment of subcontracts and purchase orders (including rental agreements), the Construction Manager shall, as a condition of receiving the payments referred to in this Article 10, execute and deliver all such papers and take all such steps, including the legal assignment of such subcontracts and other contractual rights of the Construction Manager, as the Owner may require for the purpose of fully vesting in the Owner the rights and benefits of the Construction Manager under such subcontracts or purchase orders. All Subcontracts, purchase orders and rental agreements entered into by the Construction Manager will contain provisions allowing for assignment to the Owner as described above.

If the Owner accepts assignment of subcontracts, purchase orders or rental agreements as described above, the Owner will reimburse or indemnify the Construction Manager for all costs arising under the subcontract, purchase order or rental agreement, if those costs would have been reimbursable as Cost of the Work if the contract had not been terminated. If the Owner chooses not to accept assignment of any subcontract, purchase order or rental agreement that would have constituted a Cost of the Work had this agreement not been terminated, the Construction Manager will terminate the subcontract, purchase order or rental agreement and the Owner will pay the Construction Manager the costs necessarily incurred by the Construction Manager because of such termination.

§ 10.2 Termination Subsequent to Establishing Guaranteed Maximum Price

Following execution of the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment and subject to the provisions of Section 10.2.1 and 10.2.2 below, the Contract may be terminated as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201-2007.

§ 10.2.1 If the Owner terminates the Contract after execution of the Guaranteed Price Amendment, the amount payable to the Construction Manager pursuant to Sections 14.2 and 14.4 of A201-2007 shall not exceed the amount the Construction Manager would otherwise have received pursuant to Sections 10.1.2 and 10.1.3 of this Agreement.

§ 10.2.2 If the Construction Manager terminates the Contract after execution of the Guaranteed Maximum Price Amendment, the amount payable to the Construction Manager under Section 14.1.3 of A201-2007 shall not exceed the amount the Construction Manager would otherwise have received under Sections 10.1.2 and 10.1.3 above, except that the Construction Manager's Fee shall be calculated as if the Work had been fully completed by the Construction Manager, utilizing as necessary a reasonable estimate of the Cost of the Work for Work not actually completed.

§ 10.3 Suspension

The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201-2007. In such case, the Guaranteed Maximum Price and Contract Time shall be increased as provided in Section 14.3.2 of AIA Document A201-2007, except that the term "profit" shall be understood to mean the Construction Manager's Fee as described in Sections 5.1 and 5.3.5 of this Agreement.

ARTICLE 11 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 11.1 Terms in this Agreement shall have the same meaning as those in A201-2007.

§ 11.2 Ownership and Use of Documents

Section 1.5 of A201-2007 shall apply to both the Preconstruction and Construction Phases.

§ 11.3 Governing Law

Section 13.1 of A201-2007 shall apply to both the Preconstruction and Construction Phases.

§ 11.4 Assignment

The Owner and Construction Manager, respectively, bind themselves, their agents, successors, assigns and legal representatives to this Agreement. Neither the Owner nor the Construction Manager shall assign this Agreement without the written consent of the other, except that the Owner may assign this Agreement to a lender providing financing for the Project if the lender agrees to assume the Owner's rights and obligations under this Agreement. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2 of A201-2007, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make such an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

§ 11.5 Other provisions:

« »

ARTICLE 12 SCOPE OF THE AGREEMENT

§ 12.1 This Agreement represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and the Construction Manager and supersedes all prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. This Agreement may be amended only by written instrument signed by both Owner and Construction Manager.

§ 12.2 The following documents comprise the Agreement:

- .1 AIA Document A133–2009, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Construction Manager as Constructor where the basis of payment is the Cost of the Work Plus a Fee with a Guaranteed Maximum Price
- .2 AIA Document A201–2007, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
- .3 AIA Document E201™–2007, Digital Data Protocol Exhibit, if completed, or the following:

« »

- .4 AIA Document E202™–2008, Building Information Modeling Protocol Exhibit, if completed, or the following:

« »

- .5 Other documents:
(List other documents, if any, forming part of the Agreement.)

« »

This Agreement is entered into as of the day and year first written above.

OWNER (Signature)

CONSTRUCTION MANAGER (Signature)

« »« »

(Printed name and title)

« »« »

(Printed name and title)

SUBCONTRACTOR AGREEMENT

Contractor: **LANGLAS & ASSOCIATES, INC. BOZ**
1019 EAST MAIN STREET
SUITE 101
BOZEMAN, MT 59715

(406) 585-3420

Subcontractor: **ACME CONSTRUCTION, INC.**
SAMPLE STREET
BOZEMAN, MT 59815

(XXX) XXX-XXXX

Purchase Order #: TBD

Project: **GALLATIN VALLEY YMCA**
BOZEMAN, MT 59717-2760

THIS SUBCONTRACT AGREEMENT is effective as of **2/26/2016**, between Contractor and Subcontractor. The parties agree as follows:

1. **Subcontractor shall furnish**

all necessary labor, materials, tools, equipment (including safety equipment) and coordination with other trades required for completion of the following Work

A complete job of all work per Plans and Specifications by CTA dated 5.1.16. Complete contract documents further defined by attached Exhibit A, Contract Document Index.

Contract Includes:

All labor, material and equipment necessary for complete scope of work including, but not limited to, items specifically called out in Exhibit "B", Bid Package Description.

Subcontractor agrees to requirements listed in Exhibit "C", General Requirements for all Bid Packages, as attached to this contract and issued in Addendum 1.

in the construction of the above-named Project in accordance with the terms and provisions of the contract documents, including the invitation to bidders, the instructions to bidders, the proposal, the contract, all plans, specifications, the general conditions, the special conditions, the bond, addenda.

2. **Scope of Work.**

Whether or not enumerated in the plans or specifications, the Work includes:

(a) Any item of labor, services and material described in or reasonably inferred from the plans and specifications or customarily furnished as a part of performing work of the type required by this Subcontract, or to make the work comply with any law, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to all scaffolding and equipment necessary or required for the performance of the Work, and all items and/or quantities that may be required by the actual conditions of the site.

(b) All plans, drawings, permits and fees required by law, regulations, ordinances or building codes.

Subcontractor shall provide, at its own expense, all ventilation, storage space, test samples, models, guarantees, permits, licenses, unloading facilities and services, temporary utilities, protection of adjacent work that has been installed by other trades, repair or replacement of work damaged by Subcontractor, and all other items necessary for the proper performance of the Work. Subcontractor shall pay for all inspection fees, royalties, and license fees relating to the Work and shall make all necessary arrangements and agreements so as not to infringe any patents, trademarks, and copyrights.

PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS ARE NOT REQUIRED

All Work shall be performed in a skillful and workmanlike manner with material, equipment, etc. being new and of the best kind and grade for the purpose intended.

3. **Payment**

The Contractor agrees to pay the Subcontractor, the total sum of

TBD

for actual work performed to the satisfaction of Contractor, subject to additions and deductions by Change Order. Progress payments will be made monthly in an amount equal to the estimated value of the labor, materials, and equipment incorporated into the construction and the estimated value of the materials and equipment suitably stored at the Project site, less previous payments and less retainage; progress payments shall not become due to the Subcontractor until ten (10) days after receipt by the Contractor of his payment from the Owner for such labor, materials, and equipment. Unless Subcontractor submits its written

application in a form satisfactory to Contractor at least five (5) days prior to the thirtieth (30th) day of each month, no progress payment shall be payable for such payment period. All payment applications are subject to audit by Contractor and any payment may be withheld or denied pending substantiation by audit. Any estimate by Contractor of the value of Work performed during a payment period or of the amount any deduction, offset or counterclaim relating to the Work shall be binding on Subcontractor.

Retainage in a sum equal to five percent (5%) of each progress payment shall be withheld, without interest, by Contractor until final payment. Final payment shall become payable thirty (30) days after final completion and acceptance of the Project.

Prior to each payment Subcontractor shall submit from each of its sub-Subcontractors and suppliers written lien releases. Acceptance of any progress payments by Subcontractor shall constitute a release of Contractor from any other liability, except retainage, arising or incurred during the payment period. Acceptance of final payment by Subcontractor constitutes a general release of Contractor and its surety. All payments are subject to withholding by Contractor, without interest, of any amount reasonably necessary to fully protect Contractor against any actual or potential liability or damage directly or indirectly relating to the Work or this Subcontract, or against Subcontractor's breach or threatened breach hereof. Payments may be withheld on account of (1) defective work not remedied, (2) claims filed, (3) failure of Subcontractor to make payments for labor, materials, or equipment, (4) damage to the Contractor or another Subcontractor, or (5) persistent failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. No payment shall be construed as an acceptance of defective or incomplete Work, and subcontractor shall remain responsible and liable for strict compliance with this Subcontract and the Prime Contract.

Subcontractor hereby waives and releases any and all claims and causes of action for payment in addition to the contract price.

4. **Mutuality of Documents.**

Subcontractor hereby acknowledges that it has carefully reviewed and examined all documents directly or indirectly relating to this Subcontract, that any and all known ambiguities and discrepancies have previously been clarified and/or corrected, and that no conditions exist which would affect the progress, performance or price of this Subcontract. Subcontractor further acknowledges that Plumbing, Mechanical, Fire Protection, and Electrical Drawings are diagrammatical in nature and may require detailed coordination with these trades in the normal course of completing Subcontractor's work. Such coordination is included in the price of this Subcontract Agreement.

5. **Laws, Regulations, Etc.**

The Work shall strictly comply with all federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations, statues, ordinances and directives (hereafter designated as "Laws"), including but not limited to labor laws, laws covering safety, licensing laws and bonding laws. Subcontractor agrees to indemnify and save Contractor, and Owner harmless from and against any and all claims, loss or expense caused or occasioned directly or indirectly by its failure to fully comply with any and all such Laws.

6. **Extra Work or Change Orders.**

Subcontractor shall, within seven (7) days after discovery of a required scope modification or receipt of a request by Contractor, submit a complete and detailed price quotation for proposed changes. No extra work, alterations or deviations from this Subcontract shall be performed or allowed without the written change orders signed by Contractor, and no obligation, express or implied, is assumed by Contractor for any work done without such written consent. Any change or adjustment in the subcontract price shall be agreed to by Contractor and Subcontractor and shall be set forth in such change order; if no such agreement can be reached, Subcontractor shall perform the extra work and Contractor will pay for such work performed and materials furnished by Subcontractor in an amount equal to the actual cost thereof plus zero percent (0%) of said cost in which event Subcontractor shall prepare daily time and material invoices which shall be submitted to Contractor on a daily basis. In no event shall Subcontractor's overhead and profit percentages exceed the maximum allowed to Contractor or Subcontractor in Contractor's agreement with Owner. Daily time and material invoices shall include any direct out-in-pocket material and labor costs, plus the percentage mark-up. Contractor and Subcontractor agree that any such extra, changed or additional work performed by Subcontractor shall be performed pursuant to and in accordance with all the terms and conditions of this Subcontract. Any extension of time needed as the result of the proposed change orders shall be requested by Subcontractor, in writing, prior to the issuance of such change order and shall be incorporated therein. Ordinary field modifications which do not substantially increase Subcontractor's cost of this Subcontract will be performed without any price or time adjustment. No change orders shall vary, abrogate, avoid or otherwise affect the terms, conditions or provisions of this Subcontract except as specifically set forth in the change order.

7. **Scheduling.**

Time is of the essence in the performance of the work specified in this Subcontract. Subcontractor agrees to prosecute the work, at such times and in such order as the Contractor considers necessary to avoid any delay in the completion of the Project as a whole. Subcontractor shall comply with the following schedule:

Per Bid Documents and as scheduled by Project Manager or Jobsite Superintendent. Contact Roger Davis at 585.3420.

If no schedule is set forth above, Subcontractor agrees to begin the work within 3 calendar days after being notified in writing by the Contractor to proceed and to complete work no later than calendar days after notice to proceed by Contractor.

Subcontractor shall timely submit all samples, drawings and information required for approval by Contractor no more than twenty (20) days from award or as otherwise stated in this Agreement, and to place all orders for materials in ample time for delivery, and to employ sufficient men and equipment to complete the Work in ample time for Contractor to complete its work in accordance with the construction schedule.

If in the opinion of Contractor the Subcontractor falls behind in the progress schedule, Subcontractor shall take such steps as may be necessary to improve the subcontract work progress, and Contractor may require Subcontractor to increase the number of shifts and/or over-time operations, days of work, work weekends and holidays, and/or increase the equipment or tools being used, and to submit for approval such supplementary schedule or schedules as may be necessary to demonstrate the manner in which the agreed rate of progress will be regained, all without additional cost to Contractor. If Subcontractor should delay or threaten to delay the progress or performance of this Subcontract, or cause any delay or actual or potential damage or liability to Contractor, then Subcontractor may be deemed in breach of this Subcontract and shall indemnify and hold Contractor harmless from any penalties, liability and/or damages, and shall promptly pay to Contractor any such costs, penalties, liabilities or damages so incurred, including attorney fees.

Subcontractor shall fully cooperate and coordinate the Work with Contractor and any other contractor or subcontractor at the Project in scheduling and performance of work so as to avoid conflict or interference with the work of others. Subcontractor shall bear the costs of all damages to other subcontractors and shall be directly responsible to such other contractors or Subcontractor.

The Contractor shall not be liable to the Subcontractor for delay to the Subcontractor's work by the act, neglect or default of any person, or by reason of fire or other casualty, or on account of riots or of strikes, or other combined action of the workmen or others, or on account of any acts of God, or any other cause beyond Contractor's control, or on account of any circumstances caused or contributed to by the Subcontractor.

In the event any other subcontractor should interfere with the Work or damage Subcontractor, Subcontractor shall neither seek nor be entitled to any compensation from Contractor, but will seek its damages directly from such other party. Subcontractor acknowledges that the contract price herein is based on the fact that Contractor is not liable to Subcontractor, absent any actual fraud or intentional and active tortious act, for any damages or costs due to delays, accelerations, nonperformance, interferences with performance, suspensions or changes in the performance or sequence of Subcontractor's work.

8. **Safety.**

Subcontractor shall, at its own expense, conform to the basic safety policy of Contractor including Subcontractor Site Safety Requirements and Procedures manual attached to this Agreement, comply with all specific safety requirements promulgated by any governmental authority and comply with all state and federal safety laws, including, but not limited to the Montana Safety Culture Act, the Montana Safety Act, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 or its successor, and the Construction Safety Act of 1969 or its successor, as the same may be amended from time to time. In addition, Subcontractor agrees to require its employees and sub-subcontractors to abide by all other safety requirements imposed by Contractor or the project Owner. In the event of a dispute over any safety regulation, Subcontractor and its employees shall follow the instructions given by Contractor's job superintendent. If Subcontractor causes Contractor to incur any fine or penalty resulting from the failure of Subcontractor or its employees or sub-subcontractors to comply with OSHA regulations or the Construction Safety Act, Subcontractor hereby authorizes Contractor to reduce the amount due Subcontractor under this Subcontract Agreement by the amount of such fine or penalty. Subcontractor understands that fines and penalties imposed on Contractor because of Subcontractor violations of OSHA regulations may be cumulative, so that the fine imposed on Contractor for a Subcontractor violation may be substantially larger than the fine imposed on the Subcontractor. Because of the potential civil and criminal costs to Contractor, Contractor shall have the right to immediately terminate this Subcontract Agreement, without the written notice required by Section 16, Breaches, below, if Subcontractor, or its employees or Sub-subcontractors willfully violates any safety law or regulation. In the event of such termination, Contractor shall have all of the rights and remedies set forth in Section 16, Breaches, below. Subcontractor agrees to permanently and immediately remove any employee who willfully violates any safety law or regulation upon request by Contractor's job superintendent. Subcontractor hereby agrees to indemnify and save Contractor harmless from all citations, suits (whether such citation or suit be rightfully or wrongfully brought), penalties, losses, damages, costs, and expenses including reasonable attorney fees, arising in whole or in part from the failure or alleged failure of Subcontractor to fully comply with the Montana Safety Culture Act, the Montana Safety Act, Occupational Safety.

9. **Clean-up.**

Subcontractor shall keep the Project free from all rubbish, debris, and any other waste materials. Upon completion of the work, Subcontractor shall perform whatever additional clean-up work is so directed by Contractor, at no additional cost.

10. **Material, Tools and Equipment.**

Subcontractor shall be solely responsible for the receipt, delivery, unloading, storage, warehousing, protection, and insurance upon all materials, tools and equipment it is to furnish, install, or provide under this Subcontract.

11. **Indemnification.**

Contractor shall not be liable for any loss or casualty incurred or caused by Subcontractor; Subcontractor assumes all risk of loss for all of its work regardless of whether Subcontractor had previously been paid for the same, and for all of its materials, tools and equipment.

To the fullest extent permitted by law, Subcontractor hereby agrees to defend and to hold Contractor harmless from, and indemnifies Contractor against any and all liability, costs, damages, attorney fees, and expenses from any claims or causes of action arising on or near the Project, or relating to performance of this Subcontract or the Work, including: (a) claims relating to its subcontractors, its suppliers or its employees, and (b) claims or disputes of any person or entity for damages from any cause directly or indirectly relating to any action or failure to act by Subcontractor, its representatives, its employees, its subcontractors or its suppliers, including but not limited to inaccurate surveys, failure to properly perform or interpret tests, and inspection errors, to

the extent that the liability, damages, losses or costs are caused by the negligence, recklessness, or intentional misconduct of a third party or of Subcontractor or its officers, employees or agents.

The Subcontractor agrees to indemnify the contractor against and hold the contractor harmless for any and all expenses, suits, and actions (including attorney's fees) for or on account of any injury to any person, or any death at any time resulting from such injury, or any damage to any property, which may arise (or which may be alleged to have arisen) out of or in connection with the work covered by this Subcontract to the extent such injury, death or damage may be (or may be alleged to be) attributable to the negligence, recklessness, or intentional misconduct of a third party or of Subcontractor or its officers, its employees or its agents. The Subcontractor agrees to reimburse the Contractor for all sums which the Contractor may pay or be compelled to pay in settlement of any claim hereunder, including any claim under the provisions of any worker's compensation law or any plan for employees' benefits which the Contractor may adopt.

Contractor may retain any and all monies due or to become due to Subcontractor, under this or any other contract, sufficient to save itself harmless and protect itself against any such liability or damage, including attorney fees.

Subcontractor acknowledges that specific consideration has been received by it for these indemnifications.

12. Insurance.

Subcontractor shall maintain full and complete insurance and additional insured status on its work for a minimum of one year after final payment, until the end of the warranty period, or such other longer period as may be required by the Contract Documents, in the following amounts:

Workers Compensation: Claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease or death of employees

- Workers Compensation Statutory
- Each Accident \$1,000,000
- Disease Policy Limit \$1,000,000
- Disease-Each Person \$1,000,000

Worker's Compensation, including occupational disease and employer's liability insurance shall cover all Subcontractor's employees and company owners directly engaged in the performance of this Subcontract. Montana Contractors Exemption only allowed for company owners not directly performing work at the jobsite

Commercial General Liability: Claims for damages because of bodily injury or property damage to third parties.

Insurance shall include:

- Premises-Operations
- Products-Completed
- Contractual Liability
- Personal and Advertising Injury
- No Exclusion for Blanket Explosion, Collapse, and Underground Property Damage
- Operations of Independent Contractors
- No exclusion for injury to subcontractor's employees
- No exclusion for residential, habitational or multi-family work
- Per project aggregate limit endorsement
- Waiver of subrogation in favor of contractor
- Minimum Policy Limits:
 - General Aggregate \$2,000,000
 - Products/Completed Operations \$2,000,000
 - Personal & Advertising Injury \$1,000,000
 - Each Occurrence Limit \$1,000,000

In respect to the Commercial General Liability insurance which Subcontractor is obligated to purchase by the foregoing provisions, Subcontractor agrees to cause, at its sole expense, General Contractor, to be named as Additional Insured's under said policy or policies of insurance for both ongoing and completed operations using ISO Forms CG 3287 and CG 3290 or equivalent. Subcontractor's insurance policy shall be considered primary insurance without recourse to or contribution from any similar insurance carried by subcontractor.

Automobile Liability: Claims for damages because of bodily injury or death of any person, or any property damage arising out of the ownership or use of any motor vehicle.

Insurance shall include:

- Owned, hired, and non-owned vehicles
- Limits of \$1,000,000 or greater
- Combined single limit for each occurrence for bodily injury and death, or property damage.

Subcontractor shall provide notice of any material change, non-renewal or cancellation of insurance within 30 days of such change or notice. Maintenance of proper insurance coverage is a material element of this agreement and failure to maintain or renewal coverage by Subcontractor or its lower tier subcontractors may be treated as a material breach of contract. However, failure to maintain required insurance does not modify or release Subcontractor from any other obligation under this contract.

Failure to Subcontractor to maintain complete insurance and to require its Subcontractors to do so may be deemed a material breach allowing Contractor to either terminate this Subcontract or to procure such insurance at Subcontractor's sole expense; in neither case, however, shall Subcontractor's liability be lessened. Subcontractor agrees to pay to Contractor, on demand, all losses incurred by Contractor due to failure to Subcontractor or its subcontractors to maintain complete insurance coverage.

All liability insurance shall be maintained with a company rated at least "-A" by A.M. Best Co. All certificates of insurance, with additional insured endorsements attached, must be filed and approved with Contractor prior to scheduled commencement of the Work.

13. **Assignment.**

Subcontractor shall not assign this Subcontract or any monies due hereunder without Contractor's written consent.

14. **Liens and Encumbrances.**

Subcontractor agrees to promptly pay all of its laborers, materials suppliers and sub-subcontractors and, in the event any of them file a lien against the project, to promptly remove the lien, by payment or bond.

15. **Taxes, Charges, Etc.**

Subcontractor shall pay the following taxes and fees, which are included in the Contract price:

None apply.

16. **Labor Relations.**

Subcontractor shall take all necessary action to assure harmonious labor relations at the Project and to avoid or that will permit the work to be carried on harmoniously and without delay, and that will not cause any disturbance, interference, or delay to the progress of the Project. Subcontractor agrees to discharge any employee objected to by Contractor upon reasonable grounds.

In the prosecution of all work covered by this Subcontract, or on this Project, the Subcontractor agrees to recognize and comply with all agreements of the Contractor with local building trade councils and/or separate unions concerning labor and working conditions and otherwise, applicable to this work, insofar as these agreements do not conflict with or violate any local, state or federal laws or properly constituted orders or regulations.

The Subcontractor agrees that where his work or the Contractor's work is stopped or delayed or interfered with by strikes, slow-downs, or work interruptions resulting from the acts or failure to act of the employees of the Subcontractor or by any breach of the provisions above, then the Contractor, at his option, may terminate this Subcontract; the Contractor shall have the remedies provided for herein even though the Subcontractor's employees may be engaging in work stoppage solely as a result of a labor dispute involving the Contractor or others and not in any manner involving the Subcontractor. Whether or not this Subcontract is terminated, Subcontractor shall be liable to Contractor for all damages, costs and expenses, including attorney fees, incurred by reason of any delay, interference, injury or damages suffered as a result thereof.

17. **Breaches.**

Occurrence of any of the following conditions may be deemed by Contractor to be a material breach of this Subcontract by Subcontractor:

- (a) Subcontractor fails to comply with any one of the provisions of this Subcontract, or fails to perform in accordance with the Prime Contract.
- (b) Subcontractor fails to properly prosecute and perform any part of its work in a timely manner.
- (c) Subcontractor becomes involved in labor disputes, or is listed or causes Contractor to be listed by the administrator of any union trust fund or by any union as delinquent in payment of wages or fringe benefits.
- (d) Subcontractor is adjudged a bankrupt, or makes a general assignment for the benefit of creditors, or a receiver is appointed to take over Subcontractor's business or assets, or Subcontractor becomes insolvent, is unable to, or fails to, pay its obligations as they mature.

In case of breach, Subcontractor and its surety company shall be liable to Contractor for any and all additional costs, expenses, attorney fees and other damages, both liquidated and unliquidated, which directly or indirectly result from Subcontractor's breach or threatened breach. Subcontractor shall also be responsible and liable for all costs and expenses, including attorney fees, and any assessment of liquidated or other damages incurred by Contractor if Contractor pursues any extra, change, addition, claim or dispute against any other party on behalf of Subcontractor or as a result of Contractor's defending or taking part in any action or proceeding which directly or indirectly relates to acts or omissions of Subcontractor or its subcontractors or suppliers.

If Subcontractor is in breach of this Subcontract, the Contractor shall have the right to notify Subcontractor by certified mail of the breach. If the Contractor determines that Subcontractor has not remedied and cured the default or defaults in his performance within three (3) days, then the Contractor may, at its option, without releasing or waiving its rights and remedies against the Subcontractor's sureties and without prejudice to any other right it may be entitled to hereunder or by law, terminate this Subcontract and take possession of the work and all materials, tools, equipment, and appliances of the Subcontractor and finish the Subcontractor's work by whatever means, method or agency which the Contractor may, in its sole discretion, choose, or without terminating this Subcontract, take any steps the Contractor deems advisable to secure any labor, materials, equipment, and services, and shall have a lien on and may take over all of Subcontractor's equipment, tools, appliances and materials and may prosecute the work to completion. In the event that the Contractor deems any of the foregoing remedies necessary, the Subcontractor agrees that it shall not be entitled to receive any further payment until after the Project shall have been completed. Moreover, all monies expended and all of the costs, losses, damages and extra expenses, including all management, administrative and other overhead and other direct and indirect expenses (including attorney's fees) incurred by the Contractor incident to such completion, shall be deducted from the Subcontract sum herein stated, and if such expenditures, together with said costs, losses, damages and extra expenses, exceed the unpaid balance of the Subcontract sum, the Subcontractor agrees to pay promptly to the Contractor, on demand, the full amount of such excess, including costs of collection, attorney's fees and interest thereon at the maximum legal rate of interest per annum until paid.

The Contractor's determination of the Subcontractor's default or defaults and the Contractor's decision as to the Subcontractor's failure to remedy and cure said default or defaults upon notification of their existence, made by the Contractor in good faith, shall be conclusive as to the Contractor's right to proceed as herein provided. The liability of the Subcontractor hereunder shall extend to and include the full amount of any and all sums paid, expenses and losses incurred, damages sustained, and obligations assumed by the Contractor in good faith under the belief that such payments or assumptions were necessary or required, whether actually necessary or required or not, (a) in completing the work and providing labor, materials, equipment, supplies and other items therefor or reletting the Subcontract, and (b) in settlement, discharge or compromise of any claims, demands, suits and judgments pertaining to or arising out of the work hereunder. A sworn itemized statement thereof or the checks or other evidence of payment shall be prima facie evidence of the fact and extent of Subcontractor's liability.

In addition to the cost of completion paid by Contractor, Subcontractor agrees to pay an amount equal to twenty percent (20%) of such cost of completion to cover Contractor's overhead in respect thereto. Whenever any monies are expended or costs or expenses are incurred by Contractor on behalf of or on account of Subcontractor, which Subcontractor should have paid and for which Subcontractor is required to reimburse Contractor, or if Contractor continues or completes the Work after default by Subcontractor, Subcontractor shall pay to Contractor interest at the maximum rate permitted by law from the time said monies are expended or said costs or expenses are incurred until the same are paid to Contractor by Subcontractor. Nothing herein contained shall be construed as requiring Contractor to make any such expenditures, advance any such monies, or incur any such expenses.

18. Termination for Convenience.

Upon seven days written notice to the Subcontractor, the Contractor may, without cause and without prejudice to any other right of Contractor, terminate the Subcontract. In such case the Subcontractor shall be paid for (without duplication of any item):

1. completed and acceptable Work executed in accordance with the Subcontract prior to the effective date of termination;
2. reasonable expenses directly attributable to termination.

The Subcontractor shall not be paid on account of loss of anticipated profits or revenue or other economic loss arising out of or resulting from the termination.

19. Notice.

Any notice which Contractor desires to or is required to give to Subcontractor may be delivered to Subcontractor's representative or may be delivered or mailed to Subcontractor at the address set forth in this Subcontract. Such notice shall be deemed served upon actual delivery or upon being deposited in the United States mail so addressed, and postage thereon prepaid.

20. Subcontractors and Suppliers.

At the time of commencing the Work, Subcontractor shall submit to Contractor a complete written list of all sub-subcontractors and suppliers and their current addresses. Subcontractor further agrees to notify Contractor of any additions, deletions or changes in said list within five (5) days of any such changes.

21. **Guarantee.**

Subcontractor agrees to guarantee its work for a period of one (1) year from the date of completion of the Project. Subcontractor shall remove, replace and/or repair at its own expense defective workmanship, materials and equipment which shall fail to develop ratings, capacities or characteristics required by this Subcontract, or the Contract documents, at any time within a period of one (1) year after acceptance of the Project or within such longer period thereafter as may be provided in the Prime Contract and related documents, if due to Subcontractor's negligence or error. Subcontractor shall also pay all costs necessary to remove, replace and/or repair any other work which may be damaged in removing, replacing or repairing any portion of the Work for which Subcontractor is responsible.

Contractor may demand assurance, by bond or otherwise, from Subcontractor that it will abide by its guarantee and warranty as specified herein and as might otherwise be specified to a greater extent in the Prime Contract.

22. **Governing Law.**

The validity, interpretation and performance of this Subcontract shall be governed by the laws of the State of Montana. If any term or provision of this Subcontract is found invalid, it shall not affect the valid enforcement of all remaining terms and provisions of this Subcontract.

23. **Contract Modifications.**

This Subcontract cannot be changed, modified or amended except in writing executed by all parties. This Subcontract supersedes all prior representations, understandings or agreements except as expressly stated herein. This Subcontract shall be binding upon the heirs, successors, administrators and assigns of the parties hereto.

24. **Failure to Sign Agreement.**

In the event Subcontractor has failed to sign and return to Contractor a copy of this Subcontract after having received a copy hereof from Contractor, and the Subcontractor enters upon performance of the Work, such performance shall be deemed Subcontractor's consent and agreement to be bound by all the terms and conditions of this Subcontract.

25. **Attorney Fees.**

In the event Contractor is required to employ an attorney or bring legal action to enforce this Subcontract or to take any action in respect thereto, or to defend any action arising out of Subcontractor's operations hereunder, Subcontractor agrees in any such event to pay Contractor's reasonable costs and attorney fees, including costs and fees on any appeal.

26. **Miscellaneous.**

None.

CONTRACTOR

SUBCONTRACTOR

Signature _____
(Stephen T. Langlas)

Signature _____

Title: _____ President _____

Title _____

DRAFT AIA® Document A201™ - 2007

General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:

(Name and location or address)

«_A 201 General Conditions sample»

« »

THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address)

« »« »

« »

THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status and address)

« »« »

« »

TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 OWNER
- 3 CONTRACTOR
- 4 ARCHITECT
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
- 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

ELECTRONIC COPYING of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are section headings.)

Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, **12.3**

Access to Work

3.16, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.4.2, 13.7, 14.1, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1, 3.11.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 6.1.1, 7.3.7.5, 10.3, 15.1.4

Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.5**

Additional Insured

11.1.4

Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.5**

Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

Allowances

3.8, 7.3.8

All-risk Insurance

11.3.1, 11.3.1.1

Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10, 11.1.3

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.2.2, 2.4, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.5.1

Arbitration

8.3.1, 11.3.10, 13.1.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

ARCHITECT

4

Architect, Definition of

4.1.1

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.4.1, 3.12.7, 4.1, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.7, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.3, 9.6.4, 15.1.3, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.4.1, 11.3.1.1, 12.2.1, 13.5.2, 13.5.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 4.2, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.4.1, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.5.2, 15.2, 15.3

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.5

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.5.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3.7, 12, 13.4.2, 13.5, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3.7

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.5

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

5.2

Basic Definitions

1.1

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1, 5.2.1, 11.4.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

9.7, 11.3.9, 11.3.10, 13.1.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

Boiler and Machinery Insurance

11.3.2

Bonds, Lien

7.3.7.4, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.7.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.3.9, **11.4**

Building Permit

3.7.1

Capitalization

1.3

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

Certificates for Payment

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7,

9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.3

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval

13.5.4

Certificates of Insurance

9.10.2, 11.1.3

Change Orders

1.1.1, 2.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11.1, 3.12.8, 4.2.8,

5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.6, 7.3.9, 7.3.10,

8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.3.1.2, 11.3.4, 11.3.9,

12.1.2, 15.1.3

Change Orders, Definition of

7.2.1

CHANGES IN THE WORK

2.2.1, 3.11, 4.2.8, **7**, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1,

11.3.9

Claims, Definition of

15.1.1

CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4

Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims

15.4.1

Claims for Additional Cost

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 7.3.9, 10.3.2, **15.1.4**

Claims for Additional Time

3.2.4, 3.7.4.6.1.1, 8.3.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**

Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for

3.7.4

Claims for Damages

3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.1.1,

11.3.5, 11.3.7, 14.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.6

Claims Subject to Arbitration

15.3.1, 15.4.1

Cleaning Up

3.15, 6.3

Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to

2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3,

6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.3.1, 11.3.6, 11.4.1,

15.1.4

Commencement of the Work, Definition of

8.1.2

Communications Facilitating Contract

Administration

3.9.1, **4.2.4**

Completion, Conditions Relating to

3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1,

9.10, 12.2, 13.7, 14.1.2

COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND

9

Completion, Substantial

4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3,

12.2, 13.7

Compliance with Laws

1.6.1, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 4.1.1, 9.6.4,

10.2.2, 11.1, 11.3, 13.1, 13.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 13.6,

14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3

Concealed or Unknown Conditions

3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

Conditions of the Contract

1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written

3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1,

9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.3.1, 13.2, 13.4.2, 15.4.4.2

Consolidation or Joinder

15.4.4

CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

1.1.4, **6**

Construction Change Directive, Definition of

7.3.1

Construction Change Directives

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**,

9.3.1.1

Construction Schedules, Contractor's

3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.5.2

Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

5.4, 14.2.2.2

Continuing Contract Performance

15.1.3

Contract, Definition of

1.1.2

CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE

5.4.1.1, 11.3.9, **14**

Contract Administration

3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to

3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1, 11.1.3, 11.3.6, 11.4.1

Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of

1.5.2, 2.2.5, 5.3

Contract Documents, Definition of

1.1.1

Contract Sum

3.7.4, 3.8, 5.2.3, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4,

9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.3.1, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4,

15.2.5

Contract Sum, Definition of

9.1

Contract Time

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.4,

8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 14.3.2,

15.1.5.1, 15.2.5

Contract Time, Definition of

8.1.1

CONTRACTOR

3

Contractor, Definition of

3.1, 6.1.2

Contractor's Construction Schedules

3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.5.2

Contractor's Employees

3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3, 11.1.1, 11.3.7, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Contractor's Liability Insurance

11.1

Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner's Forces

3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3.7, 12.1.2, 12.2.4

Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.3.1.2, 11.3.7, 11.3.8

Contractor's Relationship with the Architect

1.1.2, 1.5, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.3, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3.7, 12, 13.5, 15.1.2, 15.2.1

Contractor's Representations

3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2

Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the Work

3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3.1, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8

Contractor's Review of Contract Documents

3.2

Contractor's Right to Stop the Work

9.7

Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.1, 15.1.6

Contractor's Submittals

3.10, 3.11, 3.12.4, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.3, 11.4.2

Contractor's Superintendent

3.9, 10.2.6

Contractor's Supervision and Construction

Procedures

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.5, 7.3.7, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.3

Contractual Liability Insurance

11.1.1.8, 11.2

Coordination and Correlation

1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1

Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications

1.5, 2.2.5, 3.11

Copyrights

1.5, **3.17**

Correction of Work

2.3, 2.4, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**

Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2

Cost, Definition of

7.3.7

Costs

2.4.1, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.7, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.3, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.5, 14

Cutting and Patching

3.14, 6.2.5

Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors

3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 11.1.1, 11.3, 12.2.4

Damage to the Work

3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4.1, 11.3.1, 12.2.4

Damages, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.1.1, 11.3.5, 11.3.7, 14.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.6

Damages for Delay

6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2

Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of

8.1.2

Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of

8.1.3

Day, Definition of

8.1.4

Decisions of the Architect

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 15.2, 6.3, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.5.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2

Decisions to Withhold Certification

9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3

Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of

2.3.1, 2.4.1, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.5, 9.5.1, 9.5.2, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1

Definitions

1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 15.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1

Delays and Extensions of Time

3.2, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4.1, 14.3.2, 15.1.5, 15.2.5

Disputes

6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2

Documents and Samples at the Site

3.11

Drawings, Definition of

1.1.5

Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of

3.11

Effective Date of Insurance

8.2.2, 11.1.2

Emergencies

10.4, 14.1.1.2, 15.1.4

Employees, Contractor's

3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.1.1, 11.3.7, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Equipment, Labor, Materials or

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13.1, 3.15.1,

4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Execution and Progress of the Work
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.5, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.5, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.3
Extensions of Time
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4.1, 14.3, 15.1.5, 15.2.5
Failure of Payment
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.6, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
Faulty Work
(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)
Final Completion and Final Payment
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 11.1.2, 11.1.3, 11.3.1, 11.3.5, 12.3.1, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
Financial Arrangements, Owner's
2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

Fire and Extended Coverage Insurance
11.3.1.1

GENERAL PROVISIONS

1

Governing Law

13.1

Guarantees (See Warranty)

Hazardous Materials

10.2.4, 10.3

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers

5.2.1

Indemnification

3.17, **3.18**, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 10.3.5, 10.3.6, 11.3.1.2, 11.3.7

Information and Services Required of the Owner

2.1.2, **2.2**, 3.2.2, 3.12.4, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 11.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.3

Initial Decision

15.2

Initial Decision Maker, Definition of

1.1.8

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions

14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority

14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Injury or Damage to Person or Property

10.2.8, 10.4.1

Inspections

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.5

Instructions to Bidders

1.1.1

Instructions to the Contractor

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.5.2

Instruments of Service, Definition of

1.1.7

Insurance

3.18.1, 6.1.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, **11**

Insurance, Boiler and Machinery

11.3.2

Insurance, Contractor's Liability

11.1

Insurance, Effective Date of

8.2.2, 11.1.2

Insurance, Loss of Use

11.3.3

Insurance, Owner's Liability

11.2

Insurance, Property

10.2.5, **11.3**

Insurance, Stored Materials

9.3.2

INSURANCE AND BONDS

11

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy

9.9.1

Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 7.4

Interest

13.6

Interpretation

1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written

4.2.11, 4.2.12, 15.1.4

Judgment on Final Award

15.4.2

Labor and Materials, Equipment

1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,

4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3,

9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes

8.3.1

Laws and Regulations

1.5, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13.1, 4.1.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,

10.2.2, 11.1.1, 11.3, 13.1.1, 13.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2,

13.6.1, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4

Liens

2.1.2, 9.3.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of

12.2.5, 13.7, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability

2.3.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7,

4.2.12, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,

11.1.2, 11.2, 11.3.7, 12.2.5, 13.4.2

Limitations of Time

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.4, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,

5.2, 5.3.1, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,

9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 11.1.3, 11.3.1.5,

11.3.6, 11.3.10, 12.2, 13.5, 13.7, 14, 15

Loss of Use Insurance

11.3.3

Material Suppliers

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.6, 9.10.5

Materials, Hazardous

10.2.4, 10.3

Materials, Labor, Equipment and

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 1.5.1, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13.1, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and Procedures of Construction

3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic's Lien

2.1.2, 15.2.8

Mediation

8.3.1, 10.3.5, 10.3.6, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1

Minor Changes in the Work

1.1.1, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

13

Modifications, Definition of

1.1.1

Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.3.1

Mutual Responsibility

6.2

Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of
2.3.1, 2.4.1, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1

Notice

2.2.1, 2.3.1, 2.4.1, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.2, 3.12.9, 5.2.1, 9.7, 9.10, 10.2.2, 11.1.3, 12.2.2.1, 13.3, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.1, 14.2, 15.2.8, 15.4.1

Notice, Written

2.3.1, 2.4.1, 3.3.1, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 9.7, 9.10, 10.2.2, 10.3, 11.1.3, 11.3.6, 12.2.2.1, **13.3**, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4.1

Notice of Claims

3.7.4, 10.2.8, **15.1.2**, 15.4

Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.5.1, 13.5.2

Observations, Contractor's

3.2, 3.7.4

Occupancy

2.2.2, 9.6.6, 9.8, 11.3.1.5

Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.3, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.3.9, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.5.2, 14.3.1

OWNER

2

Owner, Definition of

2.1.1

Owner, Information and Services Required of the

2.1.2, **2.2**, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 11.3, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.3

Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.1.3, 11.3.3, 11.3.10, 12.2.2, 12.3.1, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

Owner's Financial Capability

2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

Owner's Liability Insurance

11.2

Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

2.4, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Clean Up

6.3

Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

6.1

Owner's Right to Stop the Work

2.3

Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2

Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.2.5, 3.2.2, 3.11.1, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3.1

Partial Occupancy or Use

9.6.6, **9.9**, 11.3.1.5

Patching, Cutting and

3.14, 6.2.5

Patents

3.17

Payment, Applications for

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Payment, Certificates for

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 13.7, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

Payment, Failure of

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.6, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, 9.10, 11.1.2, 11.1.3, 11.4.1, 12.3.1, 13.7, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Payment Bond, Performance Bond and

7.3.7.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.4**

Payments, Progress

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 13.6, 14.2.3, 15.1.3

PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9

Payments to Subcontractors
5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2
PCB
10.3.1
Performance Bond and Payment Bond
7.3.7.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.4
Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws
2.2.2, 3.7, 3.13, 7.3.7.4, 10.2.2
PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF
10
Polychlorinated Biphenyl
10.3.1
Product Data, Definition of
3.12.2
Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
Progress and Completion
4.2.2, 8.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.3
Progress Payments
9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 13.6, 14.2.3, 15.1.3
Project, Definition of
1.1.4
Project Representatives
4.2.10
Property Insurance
10.2.5, 11.3
PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
10
Regulations and Laws
1.5, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 4.1.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 11.1, 11.4, 13.1, 13.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 13.6, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4
Rejection of Work
3.5, 4.2.6, 12.2.1
Releases and Waivers of Liens
9.10.2
Representations
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.10.1
Representatives
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.10, 5.1.1, 5.1.2, 13.2.1
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.3.1, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10
Retainage
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor
3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and Architect
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples by Contractor
3.12

Rights and Remedies
1.1.2, 2.3, 2.4, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1, 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14, 15.4
Royalties, Patents and Copyrights
3.17
Rules and Notices for Arbitration
15.4.1
Safety of Persons and Property
10.2, 10.4
Safety Precautions and Programs
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3.1, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4
Samples, Definition of
3.12.3
Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
Samples at the Site, Documents and
3.11
Schedule of Values
9.2, 9.3.1
Schedules, Construction
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.5.2
Separate Contracts and Contractors
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2
Shop Drawings, Definition of
3.12.1
Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
Site, Use of
3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Site Inspections
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.5
Site Visits, Architect's
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.5
Special Inspections and Testing
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.5
Specifications, Definition of
1.1.6
Specifications
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.11, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14
Statute of Limitations
13.7, 15.4.1.1
Stopping the Work
2.3, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1
Stored Materials
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4
Subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.1
SUBCONTRACTORS
5
Subcontractors, Work by
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6.7
Subcontractual Relations
5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1

Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.7, 9.2, 9.3,
9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.3
Submittal Schedule
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7
Subrogation, Waivers of
6.1.1, **11.3.7**
Substantial Completion
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3,
12.2, 13.7
Substantial Completion, Definition of
9.8.1
Substitution of Subcontractors
5.2.3, 5.2.4
Substitution of Architect
4.1.3
Substitutions of Materials
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8
Sub-subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.2
Subsurface Conditions
3.7.4
Successors and Assigns
13.2
Superintendent
3.9, 10.2.6
Supervision and Construction Procedures
1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4,
7.1.3, 7.3.7, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.3
Surety
5.4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 14.2.2, 15.2.7
Surety, Consent of
9.10.2, 9.10.3
Surveys
2.2.3
Suspension by the Owner for Convenience
14.3
Suspension of the Work
5.4.2, 14.3
Suspension or Termination of the Contract
5.4.1.1, 14
Taxes
3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.7.4
Termination by the Contractor
14.1, 15.1.6
Termination by the Owner for Cause
5.4.1.1, **14.2**, 15.1.6
Termination by the Owner for Convenience
14.4
Termination of the Architect
4.1.3
Termination of the Contractor
14.2.2
TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE
CONTRACT
14

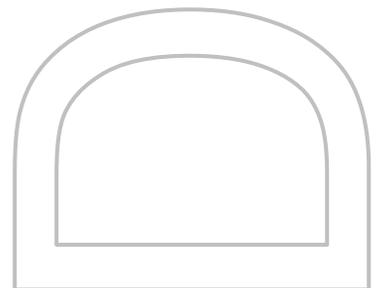
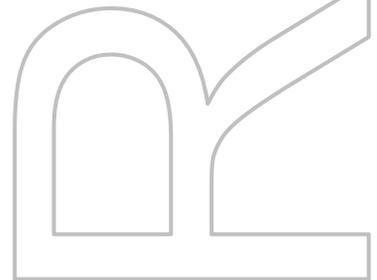
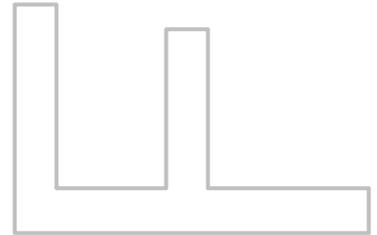
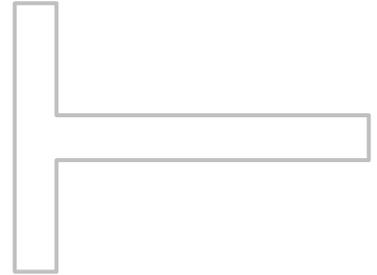
Tests and Inspections
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2,
9.10.1, 10.3.2, 11.4.1.1, 12.2.1, **13.5**
TIME
8
Time, Delays and Extensions of
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7,
10.3.2, 10.4.1, 14.3.2, 15.1.5, 15.2.5
Time Limits
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.4, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2,
5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 11.1.3, 12.2, 13.5,
13.7, 14, 15.1.2, 15.4
Time Limits on Claims
3.7.4, 10.2.8, **13.7**, 15.1.2
Title to Work
9.3.2, 9.3.3
Transmission of Data in Digital Form
1.6
UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF
WORK
12
Uncovering of Work
12.1
Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown
3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3
Unit Prices
7.3.3.2, 7.3.4
Use of Documents
1.1.1, 1.5, 2.2.5, 3.12.6, 5.3
Use of Site
3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Values, Schedule of
9.2, 9.3.1
Waiver of Claims by the Architect
13.4.2
Waiver of Claims by the Contractor
9.10.5, 13.4.2, 15.1.6
Waiver of Claims by the Owner
9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.6
Waiver of Consequential Damages
14.2.4, 15.1.6
Waiver of Liens
9.10.2, 9.10.4
Waivers of Subrogation
6.1.1, **11.3.7**
Warranty
3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 13.7
Weather Delays
15.1.5.2
Work, Definition of
1.1.3
Written Consent
1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.5,
9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.4.1, 13.2, 13.4.2, 15.4.4.2
Written Interpretations
4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Notice

2.3, 2.4, 3.3.1, 3.9, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 8.2.2, 9.7, 9.10, 10.2.2, 10.3, 11.1.3, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, **13.3**, 14, 15.4.1

Written Orders

1.1.1, 2.3, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.5.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.2



ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS

§ 1.1.1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding requirements.

§ 1.1.2 THE CONTRACT

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

§ 1.1.3 THE WORK

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

§ 1.1.4 THE PROJECT

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by separate contractors.

§ 1.1.5 THE DRAWINGS

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams.

§ 1.1.6 THE SPECIFICATIONS

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

§ 1.1.7 INSTRUMENTS OF SERVICE

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

§ 1.1.8 INITIAL DECISION MAKER

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2 and certify termination of the Agreement under Section 14.2.2.

§ 1.2 CORRELATION AND INTENT OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

§ 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

§ 1.2.3 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

§ 1.3 CAPITALIZATION

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

§ 1.4 INTERPRETATION

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as “all” and “any” and articles such as “the” and “an,” but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

§ 1.5 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER INSTRUMENTS OF SERVICE

§ 1.5.1 The Architect and the Architect’s consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and will retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and material or equipment suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with this Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect’s or Architect’s consultants’ reserved rights.

§ 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors and material or equipment suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and material or equipment suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to this Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect and the Architect’s consultants.

§ 1.6 TRANSMISSION OF DATA IN DIGITAL FORM

If the parties intend to transmit Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form, they shall endeavor to establish necessary protocols governing such transmissions, unless otherwise already provided in the Agreement or the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 2 OWNER

§ 2.1 GENERAL

§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner’s approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term “Owner” means the Owner or the Owner’s authorized representative.

§ 2.1.2 The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of or enforce mechanic’s lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner’s interest therein.

§ 2.2 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE OWNER

§ 2.2.1 Prior to commencement of the Work, the Contractor may request in writing that the Owner provide reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner’s obligations under the Contract. Thereafter, the Contractor may only request such evidence if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum; or (3) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner’s ability to make payment when due. The Owner shall furnish such evidence as a condition precedent to commencement or continuation of the Work or

the portion of the Work affected by a material change. After the Owner furnishes the evidence, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

§ 2.2.2 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

§ 2.2.3 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.2.4 The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

§ 2.2.5 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

§ 2.3 OWNER'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

§ 2.4 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of written notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such deficiencies. In such case an appropriate Change Order shall be issued deducting from payments then or thereafter due the Contractor the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect or failure. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

§ 3.1 GENERAL

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

§ 3.2 REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR

§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.2.3, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.3 The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

§ 3.2.4 If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall make Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

§ 3.3 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES

§ 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract, unless the Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and, except as stated below, shall be fully and solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely written notice to the Owner and Architect and shall not proceed with that portion of the Work without further written instructions from the Architect. If the Contractor is then instructed to proceed with the required means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures without acceptance of changes proposed by the Contractor, the Owner shall be solely responsible for any loss or damage arising solely from those Owner-required means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures.

§ 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

§ 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

§ 3.4 LABOR AND MATERIALS

§ 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other

facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work authorized by the Architect in accordance with Sections 3.12.8 or 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

§ 3.5 WARRANTY

The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

§ 3.6 TAXES

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

§ 3.7 PERMITS, FEES, NOTICES AND COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

§ 3.7.4 **Concealed or Unknown Conditions.** If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature, that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 21 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend an equitable adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor in writing, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may proceed as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume

the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.8 ALLOWANCES

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 Allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 Whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

§ 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

§ 3.9 SUPERINTENDENT

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

§ 3.9.2 The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall furnish in writing to the Owner through the Architect the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. The Architect may reply within 14 days to the Contractor in writing stating (1) whether the Owner or the Architect has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) that the Architect requires additional time to review. Failure of the Architect to reply within the 14 day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 3.9.3 The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

§ 3.10 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES

§ 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall prepare and submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents, shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project, shall be related to the entire Project to the extent required by the Contract Documents, and shall provide for expeditious and practicable execution of the Work.

§ 3.10.2 The Contractor shall prepare a submittal schedule, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, and shall submit the schedule(s) for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not unreasonably be delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

§ 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

§ 3.11 DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE

The Contractor shall maintain at the site for the Owner one copy of the Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and one copy of approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar required submittals. These shall be available to the Architect and shall be delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

§ 3.12 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

§ 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.3 Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment or workmanship and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

§ 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate the way by which the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

§ 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve and submit to the Architect Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of separate contractors.

§ 3.12.6 By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

§ 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Architect in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals by the Architect's approval thereof.

§ 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such written notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

§ 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures. The Contractor shall not be

required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law. If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by a properly licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings and other submittals related to the Work designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, accuracy and completeness of the services, certifications and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review, approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall not be responsible for the adequacy of the performance and design criteria specified in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.13 USE OF SITE

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

§ 3.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting and patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting and patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

§ 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or separate contractors by cutting, patching or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter such construction by the Owner or a separate contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of such separate contractor; such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold from the Owner or a separate contractor the Contractor's consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

§ 3.15 CLEANING UP

§ 3.15.1 The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials or rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery and surplus materials from and about the Project.

§ 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

§ 3.16 ACCESS TO WORK

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

§ 3.17 ROYALTIES, PATENTS AND COPYRIGHTS

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for such defense or loss when a particular design, process or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if the Contractor has reason to believe that the required design, process or product is an infringement of a copyright or a patent, the Contractor shall be responsible for such loss unless such information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

§ 3.18 INDEMNIFICATION

§ 3.18.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

§ 3.18.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts or other employee benefit acts.

ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

§ 4.1 GENERAL

§ 4.1.1 The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture or an entity lawfully practicing architecture in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 4.1.2 Duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 4.1.3 If the employment of the Architect is terminated, the Owner shall employ a successor architect as to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

§ 4.2 ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 4.2.1 The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for, the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents, except as provided in Section 3.3.1.

§ 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents and from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (2) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.4 COMMUNICATIONS FACILITATING CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION

Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or when direct communications have been specially authorized, the Owner and Contractor shall endeavor to communicate with each other through the Architect about matters arising out of or relating to the Contract. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and material suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with separate contractors shall be through the Owner.

§ 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.5.2 and 13.5.3, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, material and equipment suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5 and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by the Architect, of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may authorize minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of such project representatives shall be as set forth in an exhibit to be incorporated in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

§ 5.1 DEFINITIONS

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a separate contractor or subcontractors of a separate contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

§ 5.2 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS AND OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents or the bidding requirements, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall furnish in writing to the Owner through the Architect the names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for each principal portion of the Work. The Architect may reply within 14 days to the Contractor in writing stating (1) whether the Owner or the Architect has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) that the Architect requires additional time for review. Failure of the Owner or Architect to reply within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person or entity previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

§ 5.3 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS

By appropriate agreement, written where legally required for validity, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work, which the Contractor, by these Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may

be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

§ 5.4 CONTINGENT ASSIGNMENT OF SUBCONTRACTS

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor in writing; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

§ 5.4.3 Upon such assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

§ 6.1 OWNER'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS

§ 6.1.1 The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and to award separate contracts in connection with other portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site under Conditions of the Contract identical or substantially similar to these including those portions related to insurance and waiver of subrogation. If the Contractor claims that delay or additional cost is involved because of such action by the Owner, the Contractor shall make such Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

§ 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each separate contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with other separate contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to the construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, separate contractors and the Owner until subsequently revised.

§ 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, the Owner shall be deemed to be subject to the same obligations and to have the same rights that apply to the Contractor under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6 and Articles 10, 11 and 12.

§ 6.2 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY

§ 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and separate contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a separate contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly report to the Architect apparent discrepancies or defects in such other construction that would render it unsuitable for such proper execution and results. Failure of the Contractor so to report shall constitute an acknowledgment that

the Owner's or separate contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work, except as to defects not then reasonably discoverable.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a separate contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a separate contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or separate contractors as provided in Section 10.2.5.

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each separate contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

§ 6.3 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CLEAN UP

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, separate contractors and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

§ 7.1 GENERAL

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor and Architect; a Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor; an order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents, and the Contractor shall proceed promptly, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work.

§ 7.2 CHANGE ORDERS

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

§ 7.3 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or

.4 As provided in Section 7.3.7.

§ 7.3.4 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed in a proposed Change Order or Construction Change Directive so that application of such unit prices to quantities of Work proposed will cause substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

§ 7.3.5 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.6 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

§ 7.3.7 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the method and the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.7 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including social security, old age and unemployment insurance, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, and workers' compensation insurance;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use or similar taxes related to the Work; and
- .5 Additional costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

§ 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

§ 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

§ 7.4 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

The Architect has authority to order minor changes in the Work not involving adjustment in the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time and not inconsistent with the intent of the Contract Documents. Such changes will be effected by written order signed by the Architect and shall be binding on the Owner and Contractor.

ARTICLE 8 TIME

§ 8.1 DEFINITIONS

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term “day” as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

§ 8.2 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, prematurely commence operations on the site or elsewhere prior to the effective date of insurance required by Article 11 to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner. The date of commencement of the Work shall not be changed by the effective date of such insurance.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

§ 8.3 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, or of an employee of either, or of a separate contractor employed by the Owner; or by changes ordered in the Work; or by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties or other causes beyond the Contractor’s control; or by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and arbitration; or by other causes that the Architect determines may justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended by Change Order for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

§ 9.1 CONTRACT SUM

The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect, before the first Application for Payment, a schedule of values allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work and prepared in such form and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor’s Applications for Payment.

§ 9.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. Such application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by such data substantiating the Contractor’s right to payment as the Owner or Architect may require, such as copies of requisitions from Subcontractors and material suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

§ 9.3.1.2 Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

§ 9.3.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage and transportation to the site for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

§ 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, material suppliers, or other persons or entities making a claim by reason of having provided labor, materials and equipment relating to the Work.

§ 9.4 CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT

§ 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor, for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, or notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in whole or in part as provided in Section 9.5.1.

§ 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data comprising the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated and that the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will further constitute a representation that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work, (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and material suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment, or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

§ 9.5 DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION

§ 9.5.1 The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;

- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a separate contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.5.2 When the above reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.3 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or material or equipment suppliers to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Architect will reflect such payment on the next Certificate for Payment.

§ 9.6 PROGRESS PAYMENTS

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and material and equipment suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay or to see to the payment of money to a Subcontractor, except as may otherwise be required by law.

§ 9.6.5 Contractor payments to material and equipment suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors and suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, shall create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust or shall entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

§ 9.7 FAILURE OF PAYMENT

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' written notice to the Owner and Architect,

stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shut-down, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

§ 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion, shall establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and shall fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in such Certificate. Upon such acceptance and consent of surety, if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to such Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.9 PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer as required under Section 11.3.1.5 and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.10 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection and, when the

Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with terms and conditions of the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect and will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least 30 days' prior written notice has been given to the Owner, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no substantial reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment and (5), if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts, releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien. If such lien remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging such lien, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents; or
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor or material supplier shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND PROGRAMS

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

§ 10.2 SAFETY OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody or control of the Contractor or the Contractor's Subcontractors or Sub-subcontractors; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures and utilities not designated for removal, relocation or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards, promulgating safety regulations and notifying owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3, except damage or loss attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

§ 10.2.8 INJURY OR DAMAGE TO PERSON OR PROPERTY

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

§ 10.3 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and report the condition to the Owner and Architect in writing.

§ 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of such material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of such material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased in the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shut-down, delay and start-up.

§ 10.3.3 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

§ 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

§ 10.3.5 The Contractor shall indemnify the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of a material or substance the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

§ 10.3.6 If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall indemnify the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

§ 10.4 EMERGENCIES

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

§ 11.1 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

§ 11.1.1 The Contractor shall purchase from and maintain in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located such insurance as will protect the Contractor from claims set forth below which may arise out of or result from the Contractor's operations and completed operations under the Contract and for which the Contractor may be legally liable, whether such operations be by the Contractor or by a Subcontractor or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable:

- .1 Claims under workers' compensation, disability benefit and other similar employee benefit acts that are applicable to the Work to be performed;
- .2 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of the Contractor's employees;
- .3 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than the Contractor's employees;
- .4 Claims for damages insured by usual personal injury liability coverage;
- .5 Claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom;
- .6 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, death of a person or property damage arising out of ownership, maintenance or use of a motor vehicle;
- .7 Claims for bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations; and
- .8 Claims involving contractual liability insurance applicable to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 11.1.2 The insurance required by Section 11.1.1 shall be written for not less than limits of liability specified in the Contract Documents or required by law, whichever coverage is greater. Coverages, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from the date of commencement of the Work until the date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment, and, with respect to the Contractor's completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction

of Work or for such other period for maintenance of completed operations coverage as specified in the Contract Documents.

§ 11.1.3 Certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner shall be filed with the Owner prior to commencement of the Work and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance. These certificates and the insurance policies required by this Section 11.1 shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least 30 days' prior written notice has been given to the Owner. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment as required by Section 9.10.2 and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the time required by Section 11.1.2. Information concerning reduction of coverage on account of revised limits or claims paid under the General Aggregate, or both, shall be furnished by the Contractor with reasonable promptness.

§ 11.1.4 The Contractor shall cause the commercial liability coverage required by the Contract Documents to include (1) the Owner, the Architect and the Architect's consultants as additional insureds for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's operations; and (2) the Owner as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's completed operations.

§ 11.2 OWNER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual liability insurance.

§ 11.3 PROPERTY INSURANCE

§ 11.3.1 Unless otherwise provided, the Owner shall purchase and maintain, in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located, property insurance written on a builder's risk "all-risk" or equivalent policy form in the amount of the initial Contract Sum, plus value of subsequent Contract Modifications and cost of materials supplied or installed by others, comprising total value for the entire Project at the site on a replacement cost basis without optional deductibles. Such property insurance shall be maintained, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or otherwise agreed in writing by all persons and entities who are beneficiaries of such insurance, until final payment has been made as provided in Section 9.10 or until no person or entity other than the Owner has an insurable interest in the property required by this Section 11.3 to be covered, whichever is later. This insurance shall include interests of the Owner, the Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Project.

§ 11.3.1.1 Property insurance shall be on an "all-risk" or equivalent policy form and shall include, without limitation, insurance against the perils of fire (with extended coverage) and physical loss or damage including, without duplication of coverage, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, collapse, earthquake, flood, windstorm, falsework, testing and startup, temporary buildings and debris removal including demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and shall cover reasonable compensation for Architect's and Contractor's services and expenses required as a result of such insured loss.

§ 11.3.1.2 If the Owner does not intend to purchase such property insurance required by the Contract and with all of the coverages in the amount described above, the Owner shall so inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. The Contractor may then effect insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Work, and by appropriate Change Order the cost thereof shall be charged to the Owner. If the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain insurance as described above, without so notifying the Contractor in writing, then the Owner shall bear all reasonable costs properly attributable thereto.

§ 11.3.1.3 If the property insurance requires deductibles, the Owner shall pay costs not covered because of such deductibles.

§ 11.3.1.4 This property insurance shall cover portions of the Work stored off the site, and also portions of the Work in transit.

§ 11.3.1.5 Partial occupancy or use in accordance with Section 9.9 shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing property insurance have consented to such partial occupancy or use by endorsement or

otherwise. The Owner and the Contractor shall take reasonable steps to obtain consent of the insurance company or companies and shall, without mutual written consent, take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse or reduction of insurance.

§ 11.3.2 BOILER AND MACHINERY INSURANCE

The Owner shall purchase and maintain boiler and machinery insurance required by the Contract Documents or by law, which shall specifically cover such insured objects during installation and until final acceptance by the Owner; this insurance shall include interests of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Work, and the Owner and Contractor shall be named insureds.

§ 11.3.3 LOSS OF USE INSURANCE

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain such insurance as will insure the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property due to fire or other hazards, however caused. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor for loss of use of the Owner's property, including consequential losses due to fire or other hazards however caused.

§ 11.3.4 If the Contractor requests in writing that insurance for risks other than those described herein or other special causes of loss be included in the property insurance policy, the Owner shall, if possible, include such insurance, and the cost thereof shall be charged to the Contractor by appropriate Change Order.

§ 11.3.5 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, the Owner shall waive all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.7 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance. All separate policies shall provide this waiver of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise.

§ 11.3.6 Before an exposure to loss may occur, the Owner shall file with the Contractor a copy of each policy that includes insurance coverages required by this Section 11.3. Each policy shall contain all generally applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions and endorsements related to this Project. Each policy shall contain a provision that the policy will not be canceled or allowed to expire, and that its limits will not be reduced, until at least 30 days' prior written notice has been given to the Contractor.

§ 11.3.7 WAIVERS OF SUBROGATION

The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors described in Article 6, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss to the extent covered by property insurance obtained pursuant to this Section 11.3 or other property insurance applicable to the Work, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner as fiduciary. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors described in Article 6, if any, and the subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees of any of them, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated herein. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged.

§ 11.3.8 A loss insured under the Owner's property insurance shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.3.10. The Contractor shall pay Subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, shall require Subcontractors to make payments to their Sub-subcontractors in similar manner.

§ 11.3.9 If required in writing by a party in interest, the Owner as fiduciary shall, upon occurrence of an insured loss, give bond for proper performance of the Owner's duties. The cost of required bonds shall be charged against proceeds received as fiduciary. The Owner shall deposit in a separate account proceeds so received, which the

Owner shall distribute in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach, or as determined in accordance with the method of binding dispute resolution selected in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor. If after such loss no other special agreement is made and unless the Owner terminates the Contract for convenience, replacement of damaged property shall be performed by the Contractor after notification of a Change in the Work in accordance with Article 7.

§ 11.3.10 The Owner as fiduciary shall have power to adjust and settle a loss with insurers unless one of the parties in interest shall object in writing within five days after occurrence of loss to the Owner's exercise of this power; if such objection is made, the dispute shall be resolved in the manner selected by the Owner and Contractor as the method of binding dispute resolution in the Agreement. If the Owner and Contractor have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Owner as fiduciary shall make settlement with insurers or, in the case of a dispute over distribution of insurance proceeds, in accordance with the directions of the arbitrators.

§ 11.4 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

§ 11.4.1 The Owner shall have the right to require the Contractor to furnish bonds covering faithful performance of the Contract and payment of obligations arising thereunder as stipulated in bidding requirements or specifically required in the Contract Documents on the date of execution of the Contract.

§ 11.4.2 Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.1 UNCOVERING OF WORK

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, costs of uncovering and replacement shall, by appropriate Change Order, be at the Owner's expense. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, such costs and the cost of correction shall be at the Contractor's expense unless the condition was caused by the Owner or a separate contractor in which event the Owner shall be responsible for payment of such costs.

§ 12.2 CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.2.1 BEFORE OR AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether discovered before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2.2 AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of an applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from the Owner to do so unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.4.

§ 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

§ 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

§ 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

§ 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction, whether completed or partially completed, of the Owner or separate contractors caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

§ 12.3 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 13.1 GOVERNING LAW

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located except that, if the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

§ 13.2 SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS

§ 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to covenants, agreements and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make such an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

§ 13.2.2 The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate such assignment.

§ 13.3 WRITTEN NOTICE

Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual, to a member of the firm or entity, or to an officer of the corporation for which it was intended; or if delivered at, or sent by registered or certified mail or by courier service providing proof of delivery to, the last business address known to the party giving notice.

§ 13.4 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES

§ 13.4.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

§ 13.4.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach there under, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

§ 13.5 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

§ 13.5.1 Tests, inspections and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of (1) tests, inspections or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded, and (2) tests, inspections or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations prohibit the Owner from delegating their cost to the Contractor.

§ 13.5.2 If the Architect, Owner or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection or approval not included under Section 13.5.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection or approval by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.5.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

§ 13.5.3 If such procedures for testing, inspection or approval under Sections 13.5.1 and 13.5.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.5.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

§ 13.5.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.5.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

§ 13.6 INTEREST

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at such rate as the parties may agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

§ 13.7 TIME LIMITS ON CLAIMS

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all claims and causes of action, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, against the other arising out of or related to the Contract in accordance with the requirements of the final dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement within the time period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 13.7.

ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 14.1 TERMINATION BY THE CONTRACTOR

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency that requires all Work to be stopped;

- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor promptly, upon the Contractor's request, reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.1.

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, repeated suspensions, delays or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3 constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, including reasonable overhead and profit, costs incurred by reason of such termination, and damages.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor or their agents or employees or any other persons performing portions of the Work under contract with the Contractor because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' written notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

§ 14.2 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CAUSE

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors for materials or labor in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the above reasons exist, the Owner, upon certification by the Initial Decision Maker that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, may without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' written notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

§ 14.3 SUSPENSION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE

§ 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

§ 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay or interruption as described in Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was or would have been so suspended, delayed or interrupted by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

§ 14.4 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE

§ 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

§ 14.4.2 Upon receipt of written notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

§ 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for Work executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination, along with reasonable overhead and profit on the Work not executed.

ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

§ 15.1 CLAIMS

§ 15.1.1 DEFINITION

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim.

§ 15.1.2 NOTICE OF CLAIMS

Claims by either the Owner or Contractor must be initiated by written notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party must be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

§ 15.1.3 CONTINUING CONTRACT PERFORMANCE

Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Architect will prepare Change Orders and issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decisions of the Initial Decision Maker.

§ 15.1.4 CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL COST

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, written notice as provided herein shall be given before proceeding to execute the Work. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

§ 15.1.5 CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL TIME

§ 15.1.5.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, written notice as provided herein shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.5.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

§ 15.1.6 CLAIMS FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.6 shall be deemed to preclude an award of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 15.2 INITIAL DECISION

§ 15.2.1 Claims, excluding those arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, 11.3.9, and 11.3.10, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim arising prior to the date final payment is due, unless 30 days have passed after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker with no decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

§ 15.2.2 The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

§ 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

§ 15.2.4 If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of such request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

§ 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.2.6 Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

§ 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation within 60 days of the initial decision. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within the time required, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

§ 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

§ 15.3 MEDIATION

§ 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.6 shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

§ 15.3.3 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4 ARBITRATION

§ 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

§ 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

§ 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.4 CONSOLIDATION OR JOINDER

§ 15.4.4.1 Either party, at its sole discretion, may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

§ 15.4.4.2 Either party, at its sole discretion, may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an

additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.



List of Contract Forms for Subcontract Administration

The following is a list of Contract Administration Forms to be used in this Project. No others will be accepted unless noted otherwise. Hard copies of these forms will be available at the first scheduled preconstruction meeting. Electronic forms are available through Langlas & Associates. Contact Matt Drake at mattdrake@langlas.com

- Change Order Request- Langlas COR Form, per specification 00 7200
- Construction Change Directive- Langlas CCD Form or emailed directive, per specification 00 7200
- Construction Change Order- Langlas Subcontract Change Order Form, per specification 00 7200
- Proposal Request- AIA G704 as issued by Architect
- Application and Certificate for Payment- Per specification 00 7210
- Certified Payroll- US Department of Labor Form WH347 or Subcontractors own form contained identical information
- RFI and Submittal Distribution- RFI's, submittals and closeout documentation will be handled electronically. Subcontractors will be required to submit Information Requests and Submittal information electronically. Further instruction will be available at the first scheduled preconstruction meeting.

END OF LIST OF CONTRACT FORMS

2270 Grant Rd
Billings, MT 59102
P: 406.656.0629
F: 406.656.1033



1019 E Main St. # 101
Bozeman, MT 59715
P: 406.585.3420
F: 406.585.4110

To all Subcontractors and Suppliers:

Enclosed you will find a copy of the:

- A signed copy of the Subcontractor/Purchase Agreement
- Insurance requirement packet which includes a correct example of a properly filled out certificate of insurance. Adequate Certificates of Insurance provided by companies satisfactory to Langlas & Associates and according to the Contract Documents shall be filed with Langlas & Associates before commencement of any work on site.
- Pay application requirements packet – Applications not in accordance with attached procedures will be rejected and sent back to the applicant thus delaying payment.
- Subcontractor Site Safety Requirements.

Subcontractors will not be allowed to commence work at the jobsite until a signed copy of the agreement and approved copies of the insurance certificates are on file at the Langlas & Associates office!

2270 Grant Rd
Billings, MT 59102
P: 406.656.0629
F: 406.656.1088



1019 E Main St, # 101
Bozeman, MT 59715
P: 406.585.3420
F: 406.585.4110

INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS PACKET:

Before commencing work, the Subcontractor shall procure and maintain in force the insurance coverage's outlined below, and provide evidence of such coverage by submitting to Langlas & Associates, Inc. an original and appropriate Certificate of Insurance (See attached sample). The insurance carrier or carriers must be rated at least A- or better by A.M. Best or an acceptable State Fund for Workers Compensation Coverage.

Workers Compensation & Employers Liability: Shall extend to all employees and company owners directly engaged in named insured's operations except for company owners not directly performing work at the jobsite and 2nd tier subcontractors. Proof of coverage to be provided in the following limits:

Workers compensation	Statutory
Employers Liability Limits	\$1,000,000 Each Accident
	\$1,000,000 Disease- Policy Limit
	\$1,000,000 Disease- Each Employee

Commercial General Liability Insurance: Claims for damages because of bodily injury or property damage to third parties. Insurance shall include:

Premises-Operations
Products-Completed Operations
Contractual Liability
Personal and Advertising Injury
No Exclusion for Blanket Explosion, Collapse, and Underground Property Damage:
Operations of Independent Contractors
No exclusion for injury to subcontractor's employees
No exclusion for residential, habitational or multi-family work
Per project aggregate limit endorsement
Waiver of subrogation in favor of contractor

Minimum Policy Limits:

General Aggregate	\$2,000,000
Products/Completed Operations	\$2,000,000
Personal & Advertising Injury	\$1,000,000
Each Occurrence Limit	\$1,000,000

In respect to the public liability and property damage insurance which Subcontractor is obligated to purchase by the foregoing provisions, Subcontractor agrees to cause, at its sole expense, Langlas & Associates, Inc., to be named as Additional Insured's under said policy or policies of insurance for both ongoing and completed operations using ISO Forms CG 3287 and CG 3290 or equivalent.

Subcontractor's insurance policy shall be considered primary insurance without recourse to or contribution from any similar insurance carried by subcontractor. Subcontractor shall maintain coverage and additional insured status for a minimum of one year after final payment, until the end of the warranty period, or such other longer period as may be required by the Contract Documents.

Automobile Liability: Claims for damages because of bodily injury or death of any person, or any property damage arising out of the ownership or use of any motor vehicle. Insurance coverage shall include comprehensive Automobile Liability insurance including owned, hired and non-owned vehicles with limits of \$1,000,000 or greater, combined single limit for each occurrence for bodily injury and death, or property damage.

Cancellation Notice: Subcontractor shall provide notice of any material change, non-renewal or cancellation of insurance within 30 days of such change or notice. Maintenance of proper insurance coverage is a material element of this agreement and failure to maintain or renewal coverage may be treated as a material breach of contract. However, failure to maintain required insurance does not modify or release Subcontractor from any other obligation under this contract.

Certificates:

Depending on the Langlas & Associates office location providing the subcontract agreement, the certificate holder/additional insured shall respectively read:

Billings Office:

Langlas & Associates, Inc.
2270 Grant Rd.
Billings, MT 59102

OR

Bozeman Office:

Langlas & Associates, Inc.
1019 E. Main St. Suite 101
Bozeman, MT 59715

If you have any questions regarding the insurance requirements, please contact our agent:

First West, Inc.
Bryan Hall
1905 Stadium Drive
Bozeman, MT 59715
bryan@fstwest.com
406-587-5111



CERTIFICATE OF LIABILITY INSURANCE

LANGL-3

OP ID: JM

DATE (MM/DD/YYYY)

08/16/13

THIS CERTIFICATE IS ISSUED AS A MATTER OF INFORMATION ONLY AND CONFERS NO RIGHTS UPON THE CERTIFICATE HOLDER. THIS CERTIFICATE DOES NOT AFFIRMATIVELY OR NEGATIVELY AMEND, EXTEND OR ALTER THE COVERAGE AFFORDED BY THE POLICIES BELOW. THIS CERTIFICATE OF INSURANCE DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A CONTRACT BETWEEN THE ISSUING INSURER(S), AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OR PRODUCER, AND THE CERTIFICATE HOLDER.

IMPORTANT: If the certificate holder is an ADDITIONAL INSURED, the policy(ies) must be endorsed. If SUBROGATION IS WAIVED, subject to the terms and conditions of the policy, certain policies may require an endorsement. A statement on this certificate does not confer rights to the certificate holder in lieu of such endorsement(s).

PRODUCER First West, Inc. PO Box 1800 1905 Stadium Dr Bozeman, MT 59715 Bryan D. Hall, CIC	406-587-5111	CONTACT NAME:	
	406-587-9162	PHONE (A/C, No, Ext):	FAX (A/C, No):
		E-MAIL ADDRESS:	
		INSURER(S) AFFORDING COVERAGE	
		INSURER A : INSURER A	
		INSURER B : INSURER B	
		INSURER C : INSURER C	
		INSURER D :	
		INSURER E :	
		INSURER F :	
INSURED	SUBCONTRACTOR'S NAME		
	ADDRESS		
	CITY, ST ZIP		

1) Does the named insured match the name on your subcontract agreement?

COVERAGES**CERTIFICATE NUMBER:****REVISION NUMBER:**

THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT THE POLICIES OF INSURANCE LISTED BELOW HAVE BEEN ISSUED TO THE INSURED NAMED ABOVE FOR THE POLICY PERIOD INDICATED. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY REQUIREMENT, TERM OR CONDITION OF ANY CONTRACT OR OTHER DOCUMENT WITH RESPECT TO WHICH THIS CERTIFICATE MAY BE ISSUED OR MAY PERTAIN, THE INSURANCE AFFORDED BY THE POLICIES DESCRIBED HEREIN IS SUBJECT TO ALL THE TERMS, EXCLUSIONS AND CONDITIONS OF SUCH POLICIES. LIMITS SHOWN MAY HAVE BEEN REDUCED BY PAID CLAIMS. **2) Are limits accurate?**

INSR LTR	TYPE OF INSURANCE	ADDL INSR	SUBR WVD	POLICY NUMBER	POLICY EFF (MM/DD/YYYY)	POLICY EXP (MM/DD/YYYY)	LIMITS
A	GENERAL LIABILITY			POLICY NUMBER	01/01/13	01/01/14	EACH OCCURRENCE \$ 1,000,000
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> COMMERCIAL GENERAL LIABILITY	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				DAMAGE TO RENTED PREMISES (Ea occurrence) \$ 100,000
	<input type="checkbox"/> CLAIMS-MADE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OCCUR						MED EXP (Any one person) \$ 5,000
	GEN'L AGGREGATE LIMIT APPLIES PER:						PERSONAL & ADV INJURY \$ 1,000,000
	<input type="checkbox"/> POLICY <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PROJECT <input type="checkbox"/> LOC			GENERAL AGGREGATE \$ 2,000,000			PRODUCTS - COMP/OP AGG \$ 2,000,000
B	AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY			POLICY NUMBER	01/01/13	01/01/14	COMBINED SINGLE LIMIT (Ea accident) \$ 1,000,000
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ANY AUTO						BODILY INJURY (Per person) \$
	<input type="checkbox"/> ALL OWNED AUTOS	<input type="checkbox"/> SCHEDULED AUTOS					BODILY INJURY (Per accident) \$
	<input type="checkbox"/> HIRED AUTOS	<input type="checkbox"/> NON-OWNED AUTOS					PROPERTY DAMAGE (Per accident) \$
	UMBRELLA LIAB	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>				EACH OCCURRENCE \$
	EXCESS LIAB	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>				AGGREGATE \$
	DED		RETENTION \$				\$
C	WORKERS COMPENSATION AND EMPLOYERS' LIABILITY			POLICY NUMBER	01/01/13	01/01/14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WC STATUTORY LIMITS <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER
	ANY PROPRIETOR/PARTNER/EXECUTIVE OFFICER/MEMBER EXCLUDED? (Mandatory in NH)	Y/N	N/A				E.L. EACH ACCIDENT \$ 1,000,000
	If yes, describe under DESCRIPTION OF OPERATIONS below	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> N					E.L. DISEASE - EA EMPLOYEE \$ 1,000,000
							E.L. DISEASE - POLICY LIMIT \$ 1,000,000

DESCRIPTION OF OPERATIONS / LOCATIONS / VEHICLES (Attach ACORD 101, Additional Remarks Schedule, if more space is required)

Certificate holder (Langlas & Associates, Inc.) is additional insured for General Liability per policy form _____, for ongoing and completed operations. Waiver of subrogation for general liability applies to certificate holder.

7) Is Langlas & Associates, Inc. an additional insured for both Ongoing and Completed Operations? Is it noted?

CERTIFICATE HOLDER**CANCELLATION**

LANGL-6

Langlas & Associates, Inc.
2270 Grant Rd
Billings, MT 59102

SHOULD ANY OF THE ABOVE DESCRIBED POLICIES BE CANCELLED BEFORE THE EXPIRATION DATE THEREOF, NOTICE WILL BE DELIVERED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE POLICY PROVISIONS.

AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE
Bryan D. Hall, CIC

© 1988-2010 ACORD CORPORATION. All rights reserved.

Contract Modification Procedures for Modification of Subcontract Agreement

Outlined below are administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Subcontract modifications to Contract Sum or Contract Time.

MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions" or similar form. These will be distributed by the Construction Manager to Subcontractors accordingly.

PROPOSAL REQUESTS

Owner-initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed change in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time on AIA G704 or similar. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications. These documents will be distributed by the Construction Manager to Subcontractors accordingly.

1. Proposal Requests issued by Architect or Construction Manager are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within the time specified in the Proposal Request or as requested by Construction Manager, submit an itemized quotation estimated cost adjustments to the Contract Sum or Contract Time necessary to execute the change. This quotation is to be completed on the Construction Managers "Change Request Form" **or Subcontractors own form containing identical information.** Submit this form to Construction Manager for review.

SUBCONTRACTOR-INITIATED PROPOSALS

If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Subcontract, Subcontractor may initial a claim by submitted a Change Request Form to the Construction Manager.

1. Include all the information required by the Change Request Form including a description of the change, reference RFI(s), and the effect on Contract Sum and Contract Time.
2. Include a detailed, itemized list of materials, quantities and unit costs.
3. Include a detailed breakdown on labor requirements and corresponding wage rates.
4. Include a detailed breakdown of equipment, delivery charges, 2nd tier subcontract modifications and/or other requirements.
5. Show any applicable credits for labor, material or equipment as separate line items from additional costs.
6. Sign, date and transmit document to Construction Manager for review.

Upon submission of the Change Request Form by Subcontractor, Construction Manager will review the proposed change with the Owner's Representative, Architect and any of the Architects Consultants to review the content and merit of the proposed change. Upon Owner acceptance of the change, Construction Manager will issue to Subcontractor a Construction Change Directive or Subcontract Change Order

CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

Upon acceptance of the proposed change in Contract Sum or Contract Time, Construction Manager may issue a Construction Change Directive either in the form of a signed CCD Form or an email directing the Subcontractor to proceed with the work in question. This directive and associated adjustments to Contract Sum or Contract Time will be included in subsequent Change Order.

1. Subcontractor is not to proceed with any change in work without written documentation from Construction Manager as outlined above.

SUBCONTRACT CHANGE ORDER

Pending issue of Prime Contract Change Order by Architect, Construction Manager will issue to Subcontractor a formal signed change order summarizing the change in work and subsequent modification to Contract Sum and/or Contract Time.

1. Upon receipt of a signed Subcontractor Change Order, Subcontractor may include the change as a separate line item on their AIA billing document.
2. Change Order can be billed out on a basis of percentage of change order work completed

END OF SUBCONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Phased construction.
4. Work by Owner.
5. Work under separate contracts.
6. Future work.
7. Purchase contracts.
8. Owner-furnished products.
9. Contractor-furnished, Owner-installed products.
10. Access to site.
11. Coordination with occupants.
12. Work restrictions.
13. Specification and Drawing conventions.
14. Miscellaneous provisions.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

A. Project Identification: Gallatin Valley YMCA Community Center; Project Name: GYMCA.

1. Project Location: The Commons, 1794 E Baxter Ln, Bozeman, MT 59718.

B. Owner: YMCA, 514 South 23rd, Bozeman, MT 59715.

1. Owner's Representative: Andrea Stevenson, CEO, Phone: 406-994-9622.

C. Architect: CTA, Inc., 411 E Main St., Suite 101, Bozeman, MT 59715, Phone: 406-556-7100.

- D. Contractor: Langlas & Associates has been engaged as Contractor for this Project: Langlas & Associates, 1019 East Main, Suite 101, Bozeman, MT 59715, Phone: 406-585-3420.

1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:

1. We are designing a Community Center with Gallatin County, off of Love and Baxter Lane. This is a two story brick and mortar/structural steel support structure. All floors to be steel deck with concrete slabs. All interior walls to be of steel studs. No wood trim or structure within this building. It will be a fully sprinkled building.
 - a. Building Size: 21,214 SF.
 - b. 2012 Building Code.
 - c. Occupancy Classification: A3.
 - d. Building Construction Type: IIIB.

- B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 ACCESS TO SITE

- A. General: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.

- B. Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to Work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Limits: Confine construction operations to location directly adjacent to the work.
2. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to The Commons, The Commons' employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
 - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
 - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

- C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.6 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Partial The Commons Occupancy: Owner will occupy the premises during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.

1.7 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing building to normal business working hours of 7 a.m. to 6 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
 - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
 - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- E. Restricted Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.

1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.
 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided at the end of this section.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific

- features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 30 days after commencement of the Work. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
- b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.

- h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

One Specification Section per Form. (Fill in all Blanks)

Project: _____

We hereby submit for your review the following substitution for the following specified material for the above project:

<u>Section</u>	<u>Paragraph</u>	<u>Specified Material</u>
_____	_____	_____

Proposed Substitution: _____

Attach all technical data, including laboratory tests, if applicable, in duplicate to allow the Architect/Engineer to review this request.

Include complete information on changes to Drawings and/or Specifications which proposed substitution will require for its proper installation.

A. Does the substitution affect dimensions shown on the Construction Documents? Yes No

(Explain) _____

B. By signature below, the undersigned agrees to pay all costs, including engineering and detailing costs, associated with the incorporation of this product.

C. Does the substitution affect other trades? Yes No

(Explain) _____

D. What are the differences between the proposed substitution and specified product?

E. Manufacturer's guarantees of the proposed and specified item are same different

(Explain) _____

This request is accompanied by self-addressed, stamp envelope.

CTA shall continue our policy of recognizing acceptable substitutions by Addendum.

The undersigned states that the function, appearance and quality are equivalent or superior to the specified item.

Submitted By:

For Use by Architect/Engineer:

Signature

Received Too Late

Approved Except As Noted:

Not Accepted

Firm

For bidding only. Final approval subject to submittal data in accordance with requirements of specifications.

Address

Date

Date _____ 20__

Date _____ 20__

Phone

By

By

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
 - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.

2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
 - h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - j. Activity or event number.

1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
 1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings and Project record drawings.
 - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
 - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in .pdf format.
 - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.

4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Paper Submittals: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification.
 1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
 2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 3. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of subcontractor.
 - g. Name of supplier.
 - h. Name of manufacturer.
 - i. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A).
 - j. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - k. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - l. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - m. Other necessary identification.

4. Additional Paper Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
 5. Transmittal for Paper Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
 - a. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Use form acceptable to Architect.
 - b. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Provide locations on form for the following information:
 - 1) Project name.
 - 2) Date.
 - 3) Destination (To:).
 - 4) Source (From:).
 - 5) Name and address of Architect.
 - 6) Name of Construction Manager.
 - 7) Name of Contractor.
 - 8) Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - 9) Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - 10) Category and type of submittal.
 - 11) Submittal purpose and description.
 - 12) Specification Section number and title.
 - 13) Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - 14) Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - 15) Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - 16) Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - 17) Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - 18) Remarks.
 - 19) Signature of transmitter.
- E. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., LNHS-061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., LNHS-061000.01.A).
 3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Owner, containing the following information:

- a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h. Category and type of submittal.
 - i. Submittal purpose and description.
 - j. Specification Section number and title.
 - k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - l. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r. Other necessary identification.
 - s. Remarks.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Architect's FTP site specifically established for Project.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 2. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 3. Action Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
 4. Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
 5. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.

4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Three paper copies of Product Data unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in one of the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Three opaque copies of each submittal. Architect will retain one copy; remainder will be returned.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.

3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
4. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- G. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- H. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- I. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- J. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- K. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

- L. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- M. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.
- N. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- O. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- P. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.

1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
 - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified

installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

1. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as

appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data : For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
 - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.
 - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 3. Description of test and inspection.
 - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice of Award, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to

Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.

- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
 - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
 - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
 - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date of issue.
 - 2. Project title and number.
 - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
 - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.

10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.
- 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
 - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
 - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.

- c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 - K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
 - L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup according to approved Shop Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials.
 - M. Laboratory Mockups: Comply with requirements of preconstruction testing and those specified in individual Specification Sections.
- 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
 2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspecting allowances, as authorized by Change Orders.

3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.

4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.
- 1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS
- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
- B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.

3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.

- D. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold.
- E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:
 - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
 - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 - 4. Waste-handling procedures.
 - 5. Other dust-control measures.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.

1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.

- C. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
 - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.
- D. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
 - 1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed.
 - a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.
 - b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area using HEPA-equipped air-filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.
- E. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
- F. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
 - 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.

2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
 4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving."
- C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- D. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.
- E. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- F. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 3. Maintain and touch up signs so they are legible at all times.
- G. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 017300 "Execution."
- H. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- I. Temporary Elevator Use: Use of elevators is not permitted.
- J. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
 - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
 - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Section 311000 "Site Clearing."
- D. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
 - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
 - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
 - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
 - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- E. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- F. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- G. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- H. Site Enclosure Fence: Furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
 - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel.
- I. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- J. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
 - 1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
 - 2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
 - 3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.

- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
 - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
 - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial

Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 3. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.

- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.

5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:

1. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
2. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
3. Submit pest-control final inspection report.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.

- j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
 - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:

1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
 2. Three paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
1. List of documents.
 2. List of systems.
 3. List of equipment.
 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to

ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:

1. Title page.
2. Table of contents.
3. Manual contents.

B. Title Page: Include the following information:

1. Subject matter included in manual.
2. Name and address of Project.
3. Name and address of Owner.
4. Date of submittal.
5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
7. Name and contact information for Architect.
8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.

C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.

1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.

D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.

E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.

1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so

that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.

1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:

1. Type of emergency.
2. Emergency instructions.
3. Emergency procedures.

B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:

1. Fire.
2. Flood.
3. Gas leak.

4. Water leak.
 5. Power failure.
 6. Water outage.
 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 3. Operating standards.
 4. Operating procedures.
 5. Operating logs.
 6. Wiring diagrams.
 7. Control diagrams.
 8. Piped system diagrams.
 9. Precautions against improper use.
 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Manufacturer's name.
 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 4. Equipment function.
 5. Operating characteristics.
 6. Limiting conditions.
 7. Performance curves.
 8. Engineering data and tests.
 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 5. Instructions on stopping.
 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
 2. Manufacturer's name.
 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 4. Material and chemical composition.
 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
1. Inspection procedures.
 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.

- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints for Owner record.
 - 2) Submit record digital data files and three set(s) of record digital data file plots.
 - 3) Plot each drawing file, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy of each submittal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised Drawings as modifications are issued.
1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - c. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 2. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 3. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 4. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect and Contracting Entity.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
4. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss.

END OF SECTION 017839

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGES</u>
<u>TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS</u>	
DIVISION 2 – EXISTING CONDITIONS	
024600 – STEEL HELICAL PIERS.....	1-5
DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE	
033000 – CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.....	1-9
DIVISION 4 – MASONRY	
042000 – UNIT MASONRY	1-12
DIVISION 5 – METALS	
051200 – STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING	1-6
053100 – STEEL DECKING.....	1-3
054000 – COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING.....	1-6
055000 – METAL FABRICATIONS	1-7
055113 – METAL PAN STAIRS	1-5
055213 – PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS.....	1-9
DIVISION 6 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES	
061000 – ROUGH CARPENTRY.....	1-7
061600 – SHEATHING.....	1-4
062023 – INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY	1-5
064116 – PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS	1-7
DIVISION 7 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION	
072100 – THERMAL INSULATION	1-4
072501 – SELF ADHERING AIR-MOISTURE-VAPOR BARRIER.....	1-5
074113.16 – STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS	1-12
074293 – SOFFIT PANELS	1-8
074646 – FIBER-CEMENT SIDING.....	1-4
075423 – THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING	1-14
076200 – SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM.....	1-10
077200 – ROOF ACCESSORIES	1-5
079200 – JOINT SEALANTS	1-8

DIVISION 8 – OPENINGS

081113 – HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES	1-10
081416 – FLUSH WOOD DOORS	1-7
084113 – ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS	1-12
087100 – DOOR HARDWARE	1-13
087113 – AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS	1-8
088000 – GLAZING.....	1-10

DIVISION 9 – FINISHES

092216 – NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING	1-7
092900 – GYPSUM BOARD.....	1-6
093013 – CERAMIC TILING	1-10
095113 – ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS	1-8
096513 – RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES	1-5
096516 – RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING.....	1-6
096519 – RESILIENT TILE FLOORING.....	1-6
099113 – EXTERIOR PAINTING.....	1-7
099123 – INTERIOR PAINTING	1-7

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

102113.13 – METAL TOILET COMPARTMENTS.....	1-6
102116.17 – PHENOLIC-CORE SHOWER AND DRESSING COMPARTMENTS	1-4
102800 – TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES	1-9
104416 – FIRE EXTINGUISHERS	1-3
105113 – METAL LOCKERS.....	1-8

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

122413 – ROLLER WINDOW SHADES	1-5
123623.13 – PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS	1-5

DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

142400 – HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS.....	1-11
-----------------------------------	------

DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION

211313 – FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEM	1-20
--------------------------------------	------

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

221116 – DOMESTIC WATER PIPING	1-7
221119 – DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES	1-9
221316 – SANITARY WASTE, VENT, AND STORM DRAIN PIPING	1-10
221319 – SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES	1-9
223400 – FUEL-FIRED DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS	1-6
224000 – PLUMBING FIXTURES.....	1-11

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

230130.51 – HVAC AIR-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING	1-3
230500 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC	1-10
230513 – COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT	1-3
230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	1-7
230549 – SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC	1-6
230553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT..	1-4
230593 – TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC	1-10
230700 – PLUMBING AND HVAC INSULATION.....	1-10
231123 – FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING	1-13
232300 – REFRIGERANT PIPING	1-4
233113 – METAL DUCTS.....	1-9
233300 – AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES	1-9
233423 – HVAC POWER VENTILATORS.....	1-4
233713.13 – AIR DIFFUSERS.....	1-2
233713.23 – AIR REGISTERS AND GRILLES	1-2
237416 – PACKAGED ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS	1-7
238126 – SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS	1-4
238239.19 – WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS	1-2

DIVISION 26, 27, 28 – ELECTRICAL

260500 – COMMON WORK RESULTS	
260519 – CONDUCTORS AND CABLES	
260526 – GROUNDING AND BONDING	
260533 – RACEWAYS AND BOXES	
262716 – SERVICE ENTRANCE	
262416 – PANELBOARDS	
262726 – WIRING DEVICES	
262813 – OVER CURRENT PROTECTION DEVICES	
262816 – CIRCUIT AND MOTOR DISCONNECTS	
262913 – MOTOR CONTROLLERS	
265100 – LIGHTING	
270500 – TELE-DATA COMMUNICATIONS	
283100 – FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM	

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

311000 – SITE CLEARING.....	1-7
312000 – EARTH MOVING.....	1-17

SECTION 024600 - STEEL HELICAL PIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies furnishing and installing uncased Helical Piers® manufactured by the A.B. Chance Company, Centralia, Missouri.
- B. Uncased Helical Piers® shall be designed and installed to provide a service load capacity (unfactored) as indicated by construction documents. The geotechnical report prepared for the site by Dowl is included in this project manual for reference. Opinions in this report are those of the geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by the geotechnical engineer. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data by the Contractor.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Representative: Manufacturer shall provide a representative throughout the duration of the project. This representative shall be a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Montana.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be done by an A.B. Chance authorized installation contractor. Proof of current certification with the A.B. Chance Company shall be submitted to the Engineer prior to starting installation.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified by professional status and relevant experience, acceptable to A.B. Chance, shall be present during installation of all helical piers.
- D. Welding: Meet requirements of AWS "Structural Welding Code," D1.1, latest edition. All welders shall be AWS certified.
- E. Steel Helical Piers® as specified shall be manufactured by a facility whose quality control systems comply with ISO (International Organization of Standard) 9001 requirements. Certificates of Registration denoting ISO Standards Number shall be presented upon request to the owner or their representative.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Shop Drawings indicating shaft and helix sizes, and include manufacturer's catalog cuts, data sheets, and engineering recommendations.
- B. Submit Installation Records as indicated in the Field Quality Control Section of this specification.
- C. Submit Test Results for the installer performed Proof Load Testing as indicated in the Field Quality Control Section of this specification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL

- A. The steel Helical Pier® system shall be ICBO listed. Installing contractor shall furnish evidence to the Engineer by means of the ICBO evaluation report number ER-5110.
- B. Pier Shafts (Lead Section and Extensions):
 - 1. The round cornered square (RCS) solid steel shafts shall conform to the general requirements of ASTM A29 and the following descriptions:
 - a. High strength low alloy (HSLA), low to medium carbon steel grade (similar to AISI 1530) with improved strength due to fine grain size and structure having a torsional strength rating of 11,000 ft.-lbs.
- C. Helices: Carbon steel sheet, strip, or plate formed on matching metal dies to true helical shape and shall conform to the following ASTM Specifications:
 - 1. ASTM A656 or A1018 Grade 80.
- D. Bolts: The sizes and types of bolts used to connect the Helical Pier® extensions to lead sections or another extension shall conform to the following ASTM specifications:
 - 1. 0.875 inch diameter bolt per ASTM A193 Grade B7.
- E. Couplings: Couplings will be formed as an integral part of (RCS) shaft extension material through a forging process.
- F. Finish: All material shall have a Class B-1 hot dipped galvanized coating complying with ASTM A153.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT

- A. Installation Equipment:

1. Shall be a rotary type motor with equal forward and reverse torque capabilities. This equipment shall be capable of continual adjustment of the torque drive unit's revolutions per minute (RPM's) during installation. Percussion drilling equipment will not be allowed.
2. Shall be capable of applying installation torque equal to the torque required to meet the pier loads.
3. Equipment shall be capable of applying down pressure and torque simultaneously.

B. Torque Monitoring Devices:

1. The torque being applied by the installing units shall be monitored throughout the installation by the installer. The torque monitoring device shall either be a part of the installing unit or an independent device in-line with the installing unit. Calibration for either unit shall be available for review by the Owner.

3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURES:

A. Advancing Sections:

1. Engage and advance the Helical Pier® sections in a smooth, continuous manner with the rate of pier rotation in the range of 5 to 35 RPM.
2. Apply sufficient down pressure to uniformly advance the helical sections to approximately 3 inches per revolution. The rate of rotation and magnitude of down pressure must be adjusted for different soil conditions and depths in order to maintain the penetration rate.
3. If the helical section ceases to advance, refusal will have been reached and the installation shall be terminated.

B. Termination Criteria:

1. The torque as measured during the installation shall not exceed the torsional strength rating of the steel helical lead and extension sections.
2. The minimum depth criteria indicated on the Drawings must be satisfied prior to terminating the steel Helical Piers®.
3. The top of the helix is to be located not less than five (5) feet below the bottom of grade.
4. If the torsional strength rating of the pier and/or installing unit has been reached prior to satisfying the minimal depth required, the installing contractor shall have the following options:
 - a. Terminate the installation at the depth obtained with the approval of the Engineer; or
 - b. Remove the existing pier and install a pier with smaller and/or fewer helices. This revised pier shall be terminated at least three (3) feet beyond the terminating depth of the original pier.
5. In the event the minimum installation torque is not achieved at minimum depth,

the Contractor shall install the foundation deeper using additional plain extension sections.

6. The average torque for the last three (3) feet of penetration shall be used as a basis of comparison with the minimum recommended installation torque. The average torque is the average of the last three readings recorded at one (1) foot intervals. This average torque is intended solely as an indication of the pier's ultimate compression capacity.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The installer shall keep a written installation record for each Helical Pier®. The record must be approved and signed by the Manufacturer's Representative identified in section 1.3.

1. This record shall include the following information:

- a. Project name and location.
- b. Name of authorized and certified dealer and installer.
- c. Name of installer's foreman or representative witnessing the installation
- d. Name of Owner's Representative witnessing the installation
- e. Date of installation.
- f. Location of Helical Pier®.
- g. Description of lead section including number and diameter of helices and extensions used.
- h. Overall depth of installation from a known reference point
- i. Installation torque at termination of pier.
- j. Quantity of grout take up.
- k. Depth of grouted cylinder and termination elev. of top of cylinder.
- l. Remarks regarding installation.

- B. Installer shall implement a quality control testing program to ensure stability of the overall foundation system. This Quality Control Testing Program shall include conducting proof load tests for a minimum of twenty percent of the production piers as indicated below. Proof load tests shall be performed to 1.3 times the design loads indicated in the Construction Documents. Proof Load Tests shall follow FHWA "Micropile Design and Construction Guidelines" , FHWA-SA-97-070, for load schedule, creep, and acceptance criteria with the following exceptions: each incremental load shall be held for a minimum of two minutes and total deflection at 1.3 times the design loads indicated shall not exceed 0.6 inches.

- C. Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to provide Quality Assurance testing to ensure minimum pier performance indicated in the construction documents. Quality Assurance testing shall include a minimum of four proof load tests following the same Proof Load Test requirements indicated above.

- D. If a production Helical Pier® that is tested fails to meet the acceptance criteria, the Contractor shall be directed to proof test another Pier in the vicinity. For failed Helical Piers® and further construction of other foundations, the Contractor shall modify the design, the construction

procedure, or both. These modifications include, but are not limited to, installing replacement Helical Piers® modifying the installation methods and equipment, increasing the minimum effective installation torque, changing the helix configuration, or changing the Helical Pier® material. Modifications that require changes to the structure shall have the prior review and approval by the Engineer and Owner. Modifications to pier designs, installation procedures, or foundation elements resulting from failed test results shall be at the Contractor's expense.

END OF SECTION 024600

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material certificates.
- B. Material test reports.
- C. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301.
 - 2. ACI 117.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706, deformed for welding only.
- C. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- D. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II gray.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.

- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, graded.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II.
- E. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.

2.5 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.

2.6 VAPOR BARRIERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Barrier: ASTM E 1745, Class A, except with maximum water-vapor permeance of 0.018. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape. Provide a thickness not less than 15 mils thick.

2.7 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of

floor covering. Verify with manufacturer that products have been tested against interference with bonding of floor covering.

- F. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
 - 1. To be used at exposed concrete slabs.

2.8 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 20 percent.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 - 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a w/c ratio below 0.50.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Normal-Weight Concrete:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: As indicated at 28 days.
 - 2. Maximum W/C Ratio: As indicated.
 - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, 8 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 4. Air Content: As indicated

2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.12 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and furnish batch ticket information.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

3.3 VAPOR-BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Sheet Vapor Barrier: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least **one-fourth** of concrete thickness as follows:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

3.6 WATERSTOP INSTALLATION

- A. Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.

3.8 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
 - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
 - 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix 1 part portland cement to 1-1/2 parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
 - 3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
 - 1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
- D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
 2. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.- long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 3/16 inch.
- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.10 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if *hot, dry, or windy* conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven

- days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
 4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.11 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Clay face brick.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For reinforcing steel. Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of exposed masonry unit and colored mortar].

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of product. For masonry units, include data on material properties.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109 for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91 for air content.
 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 feet vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.

2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 - 2. See Plans for split-faced colored CMU.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent **for exposed units**.
- C. CMUs: ASTM C 90.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2500 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Lightweight.

2.3 CONCRETE LINTELS

- A. Concrete Lintels: ASTM C 1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than that of CMUs.

2.4 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
 - 1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
 - 2. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216 or hollow brick complying with ASTM C 652, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area).
 - 1. Grade: SW.
 - 2. Type: FBX.
 - 3. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3350 psi.
 - 4. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C 67.
 - 5. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
 - 6. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing according to ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet.
 - 7. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches wide by 2-1/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 - 1. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.

2. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
 3. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- F. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- G. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
- H. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60.
- B. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement – not required.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized carbon-steel continuous wire.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153, Class B coating.
 3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- C. Partition Top Anchors: 0.105-inch-thick metal plate with a 3/8-inch-diameter metal rod 6 inches long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch.

2. Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Connector section and rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes top and bottom, and having slotted holes for inserting connector section. Connector section consists of a rib-stiffened, 0.105-inch sheet metal bent plate, 0.25-inch diameter steel wire joint reinforcement with rigid PVC extrusion designed to engage continuous wire in mortar joint.
3. Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No. 10 diameter, and with coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Flexible Flashing: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D 4637/D 4637M, 0.040 inch thick.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - 2) Firestone Specialty Products.
 - 3) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
 - 4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
 - 5) Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 6) Wire-Bond.

B. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene, urethane, or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Cavity Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
 - 2) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
 - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
 - 4) Wire-Bond.

E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.
 - b. CavClear/Archovations, Inc.
 - c. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
 - d. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
 - e. Mortar Net Solutions.
 - f. Wire-Bond.
2. Configuration: Provide one of the following:
 - a. Sheets or strips not less than 1 inch thick and installed to full height of cavity, with additional strips 4 inches high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.

2.10 MASONRY-CELL FILL

- A. Loose-Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C 549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).

2.11 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

2.12 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. For exterior masonry, use portland cement-lime or masonry cement mortar.
 - 3. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime or masonry cement mortar.
 - 4. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar.
 - 1. For all reinforced and veneer masonry, use Type S.
- C. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, **Table 1 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.**
 - 3. Provide grout with a slump of **8 to 11 inches** as measured according to ASTM C 143.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- B. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- C. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

3.2 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
 - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.

2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
3. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- D. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay CMUs as follows:
 - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing and masonry backup with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Fasten screw-attached and seismic anchors through sheathing to wall framing and to masonry backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners per anchor.
 - 2. Embed tie sections and continuous wire in masonry veneer joints.
 - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
 - 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 16 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 8 inches around perimeter.

3.6 MASONRY-CELL FILL

- A. Pour loose-fill insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of fill at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of fill to one story high, but not more than 20 feet.

3.7 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.

- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 2. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
 3. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
- C. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Cover cavity side of weep holes with plastic insect screening at cavities insulated with loose-fill insulation.
- D. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
- E. Install cavity vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form cavity vents.
1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

3.8 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.

1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to Level B in TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 67 for compressive strength.
- F. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
- G. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780.
- H. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- I. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.

3.10 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- B. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.

3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
6. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.11 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 1. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- B. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042000

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Grout.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator and testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD, or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (AC 172).
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.

- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC 303.
 - 2. AISC 360.
 - 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992, Grade 50.
- B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36, Grade 36.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36, Grade 36.
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, round head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
- C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.
- D. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Configuration: Straight.
 - 2. Finish: Plain.

E. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36.

1. Finish: Plain.

2.3 PRIMER

A. Primer: Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.

B. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Pretensioned.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).

- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
 - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
 - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test shop-bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

3.3 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Pretensioned.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 - 2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
 - 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
 - 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- C. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1.
 - 1. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof deck.
2. Composite floor deck.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

C. Evaluation reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOF DECK

- A. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 minimum, cleaned, pretreated, and painted in accordance with the CSi Metal Dek Group – Versa-Steel® System.
 - a. Color: White.
 2. Deck Profile: CSi Metal Dek Group; Versa-Dek® 3.5 LS.
 3. Profile Depth: 3 ½ inches.
 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 20 gage.

2.2 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

- A. Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, minimum, cleaned, pretreated, and painted in accordance with the CSi Metal Dek Versa Steel® System.
 - a. Color: White.
 2. Deck Profile: CSi Metal Dek Group; Versa-Dek® composite LS.
 3. Profile Depth: 3 1/2 inches or 2 inches, as indicated.
 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 18 gage or 20 gage, as indicated.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- C. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- C. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- D. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- E. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- F. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.

END OF SECTION 053100

SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Product test reports.

D. Research reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

C. Comply with AISI S230 "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AllSteel & Gypsum Products, Inc.
 2. California Expanded Metal Products Company.
 3. ClarkWestern Building Systems, Inc.
 4. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
 5. Craco Mfg., Inc.
 6. Custom Stud Inc.
 7. Design Shapes in Steel.
 8. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
 9. MarinoWARE.
 10. MBA Building Supplies, Inc.
 11. Nuconsteel; a Nucor Company.
 12. Olmar Supply, Inc.
 13. Quail Run Building Materials, Inc.
 14. SCAFCO Corporation.
 15. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
 16. State Building Products, Inc.
 17. Steel Construction Systems.
 18. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
 19. Steel Structural Systems.
 20. Steeler, Inc.
 21. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
 22. Telling Industries, LLC.
 23. United Metal Products, Inc.
 24. United Steel Manufacturing.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency.
1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:

1. Grade: ST33H.
2. Coating: G60.

B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: 33, Class 1.
2. Coating: G60 (Z180).

2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as indicated using SSMA nomenclature:
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.
- C. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
- D. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
- E. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel headless bolts, with encased end threaded, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.

- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- B. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

- C. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
- D. Install framing members in one-piece lengths.
- E. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- G. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- H. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- I. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 - 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing and anchor to building structure.
 - 4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.

- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Miscellaneous steel framing and supports.
2. Shelf angles.
3. Metal ladders.
4. Miscellaneous steel trim.
5. Metal bollards.
6. Loose bearing and leveling plates.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Paint products.
2. Grout.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A276, Type 304.
- D. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500, cold-formed steel tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Zinc-Coated Steel Wire Rope: ASTM A741.
 - 1. Wire-Rope Fittings: Hot-dip galvanized-steel connectors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.
- G. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
 - 1. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches.
 - 2. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653, commercial steel, Type B structural steel, Grade 33, with G90 coating; 0.108-inch nominal thickness.
 - 3. Material: Cold-rolled steel, ASTM A 1008, commercial steel, Type B structural steel, Grade 33; 0.0966-inch minimum thickness; coated with rust-inhibitive, baked-on, acrylic enamel.
- H. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47 malleable iron or ASTM A 27 cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

- D. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches long at not more than 8 inches o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings.
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- C. Water-Based Primer: Emulsion type, anticorrosive primer for mildly corrosive environments that is resistant to flash rusting when applied to cleaned steel, complying with MPI#107 and compatible with topcoat.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- F. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- G. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended.

- D. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- E. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
 - 1. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at 24 inches o.c.
- D. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.

2.8 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3.
- B. Steel Ladders:
 - 1. Space siderails 18 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
 - 3. Rungs: 3/4-inch- diameter steel bars.
 - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
 - 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung.

6. Prime ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
- C. Prime exterior miscellaneous steel trim with zinc-rich primer.

2.10 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- thick steel plate.
- B. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch anchor bolts.
- C. Prime bollards with zinc-rich primer.

2.11 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

2.12 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated.
- B. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.13 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.14 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

2.15 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153 for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123 for other steel and iron products.
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Shop prime with zinc-rich primer.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
- B. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink grout.

3.3 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 055113 - METAL PAN STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.
2. Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.
3. Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal pan stairs.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed).
- D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 25, exposed.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- C. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, 6 by 6 inches, W1.4 by W1.4, centered depth in all steps.

2.3 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts,[railings,] clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
 - 1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Weld connections to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes are okay.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

2.4 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," [Commercial] [Service] Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Stair Framing:
 - 1. Fabricate stringers of steel channels as incicated.
 - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel stringers.

2. Construct platforms of steel channel or HSS headers and miscellaneous framing members as indicated.
 3. Weld stringers to headers; weld framing members to stringers and headers.
- C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, subthead pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness as indicated.

2.5 STAIR RAILINGS

- A. Steel Tube Railings: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of tube, post spacings, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.
1. Rails and Posts: 1-5/8-inch- diameter top, bottom rails and posts.
 2. Picket Infill: 1/2-inch- round pickets spaced less than 4 inches clear.
 3. Perforated-Metal Infill: Perforated-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal, and not less than 0.043 inch thick. Orient perforated metal with pattern as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint as shown in NAAMM AMP 521.
- C. Form changes in direction of railings by bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
- D. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- E. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- F. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails.
- G. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding.
- H. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work.
- I. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLING METAL PAN STAIRS

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- B. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints.
- D. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
- E. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.2 INSTALLING RAILINGS

- A. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
 - 1. Anchor posts to steel by **welding** to steel supporting members.
 - 2. Anchor handrail ends to masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with postinstalled anchors and bolts.
- B. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 055113

SECTION 055213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055112 "Metal Pan Stairs" for steel tube railings associated with metal pan stairs.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
 - 2. Railing brackets.
 - 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
 2. Fittings and brackets.
 3. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
 - a. Show method of connecting and finishing members at intersections.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- E. Product Test Reports: For pipe and tube railings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.
- F. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
 3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 2. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
1. Provide type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

2.3 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
- B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
- C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating, commercial steel Type B, 11 gauge thick, with 3/4-inch holes 1 inch o.c. in staggered rows.
- F. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, square pattern, 3-inch woven-wire mesh, made from 0.134-inch- diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
 - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
 - 2. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
 - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
 - 3. Provide square or hex socket flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- E. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- F. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

- G. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- H. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
 - 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- J. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:

1. By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.
- K. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- L. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- M. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- N. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- O. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- P. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless-steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- Q. Perforated-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from perforated metal made from galvanized steel.
 1. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than 0.043 inch thick.
 2. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail.
- R. Woven-Wire Mesh Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from woven-wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch metal channel frames. Make wire mesh and frames from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
 1. Orient wire mesh with wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail.
- S. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves; however, galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- C. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
 - 1. Shop prime uncoated railings with primers specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" unless indicated.
 - 2. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
 - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
 - 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
 - 1. Coat, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint, concealed surfaces of aluminum that are in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals.
- D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- C. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches of post.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, attached to post with set screws.
- D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
 - 1. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
- E. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends.
- C. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:

1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
3. For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- D. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 055213

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 - 2. Wood blocking and nailers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.

4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

- B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
3. Power-driven fasteners.
4. Post-installed anchors.
5. Metal framing anchors.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
 - 4. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.

4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841. For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 1. Plywood backing panels.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Furring.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of the following species:
 1. Northern species; NLGA.
- C. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content and the following species and grades:
 1. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- D. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- F. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.

- G. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- H. Comply with AWPAC M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- I. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Parapet sheathing.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 072501 "Self Adhering Vapor Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Emissions: Products shall meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.2 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, gypsum sheathing; with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges.
 - 1. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch thick.
 - 2. Edge and End Configuration: Square.
 - 3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

2.3 PARAPET SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Exterior sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. For parapet and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
- B. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- C. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.

1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
- D. Coordinate wall and parapet sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
 2. Install panels with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
 3. Install panels with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 062023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior trim, including non-fire-rated interior door and sidelight frames.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.
 - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for priming and backpriming of interior finish carpentry.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.

- B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.

- 1. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.
 - 2. Include copies of warranties from chemical-treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

- B. Samples for Verification:

- 1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products with non-factory-applied finish, with 1/2 of exposed surface finished, 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and the following grading rules:
 - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association, "Standard Grading Rules for Northeastern Lumber."
 - 2. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association, "Western Lumber Grading Rules."
- B. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
 - 1. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece, or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by inspection agency.

2.2 INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):
 - 1. Species and Grade: White maple FAS; Clear Finish; NHLA.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 13 percent.

3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
4. Gluing for Width: Not allowed.
5. Veneered Material: Allowed.
6. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
7. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members except those with ends exposed in finished work:
 1. Interior standing and running trim except shoe and crown molds.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements, or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.

1. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
4. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Miter at returns, miter at outside corners, and cope at inside corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.
 1. Match color and grain pattern of trim for transparent finish (stain or clear finish) across joints.
 2. Install trim after gypsum-board joint finishing operations are completed.
 3. Install without splitting; drill pilot holes before fastening where necessary to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes, if any.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 062023

SECTION 064116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets.
2. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets unless concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 123623.13 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops."

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including panel products, high-pressure decorative laminate, adhesive for bonding plastic laminate, and cabinet hardware and accessories.

1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
2. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for electrical switches and outlets and other items installed in architectural plastic-laminate cabinets.
3. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program compliance label to Shop Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
 - 1. Thermoset decorative panels.
 - 2. High-pressure decorative laminate.
 - 3. Adhesives.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If cabinets must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that cabinets can be supported and installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of architectural plastic-laminate cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. The Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in the quality standard and additional requirements beyond those of the quality standard. Comply with those selections and requirements in addition to the quality standard.
 - a. AWI.
- B. Grade: Custom.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Cabinet, Door, and Drawer Front Interface Style: Flush overlay.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Abet Laminati, Inc.
 - b. Formica Corporation.
 - c. Lamin-Art, Inc.
 - d. Pionite: a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand.
 - e. Wilsonart International Holdings, Inc.
- F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
 - 2. Vertical Surfaces: Grade HGS.
 - 3. Edges: Grade HGS.
 - 4. Pattern Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
- G. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Thermoset decorative panels.
 - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC edge banding, 0.12 inch thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
 - b. Edges of Thermoset Decorative Panel Shelves: PVC or polyester edge banding.
 - c. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermoset decorative panels with PVC or polyester edge banding.
 3. Drawer Bottoms: Thermoset decorative panels.
- H. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.
- I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL.
- J. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners.
- K. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
1. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
 - a. Solid colors, matte finish.
 - b. Wood grains, matte finish.
 - c. Patterns, matte finish.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
1. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.

4. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for test methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 087111 "Door Hardware (Descriptive Specification)."
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- E. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal, two-pin type with shelf hold-down clip.
- F. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
 1. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-overtravel-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
- G. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- H. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- I. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
 1. Satin Chromium Plated: BHMA 626 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 652 for steel base.
- J. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement.
 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing cabinets, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install cabinets to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install cabinets level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.

1. Use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- F. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
 2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with:
 - a. No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.
 - b. No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064116

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
2. Molded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
3. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 072501 "Self Adhering Air-Moisture-Vapor Barrier.
2. Section 072119 "Foamed-in-Place Insulation" for spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation.
3. Section 075423 "Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Extruded polystyrene boards in this article are also called "XPS boards." Roman numeral designators in ASTM C 578 are assigned in a fixed random sequence, and their numeric order does not reflect increasing strength or other characteristics.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type IV: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. DiversiFoam Products.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - c. Kingspan Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.2 MOLDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Molded Polystyrene Board, Type IV: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength.
 1. With drainage channels and integral nailer board (4" strips at 24" on center).
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACH Foam Technologies, LLC.
 - b. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - c. Insulfoam LLC; a Carlisle company.
 - d. Plymouth Foam, Inc.
 3. R-20 thickness.
 4. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.3 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Glass-Fiber-Mat Faced: ASTM C 1289, glass-fiber-mat faced, Type II, Class 2.
 - 1. With drainage channels and integral nailer board (4" strips at 24" on center).
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - b. Firestone Building Products.
 - c. Hunter Panels.
 - d. Rmax, Inc.
 - 3. R-20 thickness.
 - 4. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Mechanically fasten insulation through nailer strips approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation, with edges butted tightly in both directions and around obstructions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
 - 1. Install insulation with drainage channels to inside of wall. Ensure water can freely drain out of wall.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ROOF INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Mechanically fasten insulation through nailer strips approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation, with edges butted tightly in both directions and around obstructions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
 - 1. Install insulation with drainage channels to inside of wall. Ensure water can freely drain out of wall.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072501 – SELF ADHERING AIR / MOISTURE / VAPOR BARRIER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Self-Adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier membrane.
2. Self-Adhering flashing.
3. Miscellaneous materials
4. Vapor barrier inspection requirements.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. The self-adhering air/moisture/ vapor barrier membrane specified in this section and illustrated in the drawings provides the air, liquid moisture and moisture vapor barrier for the exterior walls of the building.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Details in the contract drawings illustrate installation of continuous self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier membranes over the top of sheathing of all exterior building envelope surfaces. All membrane penetrations, side laps, terminations and transitions of air/moisture/vapor barrier membrane are to be sealed air and moisture vapor tight using methods and materials that will not allow air or moisture vapor to infiltrate or exfiltrate to or from building interiors through finished membranes and prevent liquid water from entering the building interior through finished membranes. All details may not illustrate or indicate specific membrane sealing materials, techniques or methods. Contractor(s) and their personnel responsible for installing self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier membranes shall review all applicable drawings and construction types and provide installation methods and materials appropriate to provide a permanent air , moisture vapor and liquid moisture seal for all substrates encountered on the project and as required to meet the stated finished performance criteria.

1. Lack of experience or understanding of the function of the self-adhering membrane specified in this Section on the part of the Contractor or their personnel will not be grounds for accepting substandard installation and/or sealing of the membrane assembly.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier flashing details: Include door, window and penetration details showing installation sequencing of flashing membranes to provide an air, moisture vapor and liquid moisture seal.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Inspection Requirements: Installed self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier and associated flashings shall be inspected by the Architect prior to being concealed with other materials or components. Refer to Article 3.3 Field Quality Control, Paragraph B of this Section.
- B. Self Adhering Air/Moisture/Vapor Barrier Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier Installer, and installers of overlying materials, windows and doors which will cover self adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier membranes, fit into openings flashed with air/moisture/vapor barrier materials or which may require penetration of air/moisture/vapor barrier membranes after air/moisture/vapor barrier membranes have been installed..
 2. Review methods and procedures related to self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 4. Examine sheathing substrates conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
 5. Review flashing requirements at windows, doors, terminations, wall penetrations, and other construction that will affect the air/moisture/vapor barrier system.
 - a. Review means/methods and procedures required to permanently seal air/moisture/vapor barrier membranes at perimeters, terminations, openings and penetrations.
 - b. Review appropriate selection of flashing materials for high temperature locations.
 - c. Review coordination requirements with installers of roof vapor barrier.
 6. Review temporary protection requirements for air/moisture/vapor barrier during and after installation.
 7. Review self-adhering membrane air/moisture/vapor barrier inspection and repair procedures to be performed prior to installing any materials or components which will

cover installed air/moisture/vapor barrier or associated flashing. Refer to Article 3.3 Field Quality Control, Paragraph B of this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-ADHERING AIR/MOISTURE/VAPOR BARRIER

- A. Self-adhering Membrane: Self-adhering membrane consisting of an SBS rubberized asphalt compound integrally laminated to a thermoplastic film on the top side with factory applied release film on the back side.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Henry Company "Blue Skin® SA".
 - b. Approved Equal.
- B. Adhesive/Primer: Provide adhesive/primer when recommended by self-adhering membrane manufacturer for substrate or as required for adhesion:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Henry Company "HE571 – BlueSkin® Adhesive".
 - b. Approved Equal.
- C. Flashing Membranes:
1. High Temperature Locations: Self-adhering membrane flashing for locations subject to higher in place service temperatures:
 - a. Door & Window openings:
 - 1) Henry Company "BlueSkin® TWF".
 - 2) Approved Equal.
 - b. Masonry Thru-wall Flashings:
 - 1) Henry Company "BlueSkin® TWF".
 - 2) Approved Equal.
 2. Miscellaneous Penetrations and Transitions: Self-adhering membrane flashing for locations subject to normal in place service temperatures:
 - a. Henry Company "Blue Skin® SA".
 - b. Approved Equal.
- D. Sealant: ASTM C920 Type S, Grade NS, Class 35 moisture cure, medium modulus sealant.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

- a. Henry Company "HE925G – BES Sealant - Gray".
 - b. Approved Equal.
- E. Spray Polyurethane Foam (Gap Seal): One component spray polyurethane foam for sealing large gaps in sheathing around penetrations or at terminations to form air-tight and sound substrate for air/moisture/vapor barrier and flashings:
1. Dow "Great Stuff Pro."
 2. Dow "Froth Pack."
 3. Approved Equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELF ADHERING AIR / MOISTURE / VAPOR BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Apply adhesives/primers as required for adhesion of self-adhering membrane.
- B. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with specified self-adhering membrane overlapping edges 3-inches and end laps 6-inches. After membrane has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that membrane and overlaps are completely adhered to substrates.
 1. Provide specified one-component spray foam as required at large gaps/openings around penetrations and at terminations as required for sound substrate for air/moisture/vapor barrier membrane.

3.2 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Coordinate all flashing installations with window, door and exterior finished (siding, masonry, etc) to provide a completed exterior building envelope that is air, liquid moisture and moisture vapor tight. Select flashing membrane appropriate for in service operating temperature of component /opening to be flashed.
 1. Prime substrates as required for full adhesion of flashing membranes.
 2. Apply flashing membrane at all exterior openings and penetrations as indicated. Wrap into openings as indicated to form a continuous barrier with opening components. Sequence flashing installation so the laps shed water. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Monitoring: Air/Moisture/Vapor barrier Installer shall assign competent supervisor to monitor installation of the self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier system on a daily basis to insure quality of air/moisture/vapor barrier membrane installation.

1. Finished air/moisture/vapor barrier membranes and flashings shall lay flat and form a continuous, permanent air, liquid moisture and moisture vapor seal.
- B. Final Air/Moisture/Vapor Barrier Inspection: Prior to covering/concealing any component of the air/moisture/vapor barrier system (including flashings), contact the Architect for final inspection.
 1. Notify Architect 1-week prior to final inspection.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to have materials and/or door/window components removed and reinstalled at no additional cost to the Owner which conceal the self-adhering air/moisture/vapor barrier system (including flashings) which have not been inspected.
 2. Deficient or damaged air/moisture/vapor barriers membrane or associated flashings shall be replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 072501

SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes standing-seam metal roof panels.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 074293 "Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of deck, purlins, and rafters during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.
 - 9. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include clips, fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 1680 or ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 or ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 2140.
- E. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
- F. FM Global Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Global 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FM Global's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Global markings.
1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A- 120.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint

sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.

1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1514.

- B. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and a flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Advanced Architectural Products.
- b. AEP Span; A BlueScope Steel Company.
- c. Architectural Building Components.
- d. Architectural Metal Systems.
- e. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
- f. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
- g. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
- h. Drexel Metals.
- i. Englert, Inc.
- j. Fabral.
- k. Garland Company, Inc. (The).
- l. IMETCO.
- m. MBCI; a division of NCI Group, Inc.
- n. McElroy Metal, Inc.
- o. Merchant & Evans Inc.
- p. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
- q. Morin - A Kingspan Group Company.
- r. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
- s. Ryerson Tull, Inc.
- t. Ultra Seam Incorporated.
- u. Union Corrugating Company.
- v. VICWEST.

2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel

sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.

- a. Nominal Thickness: 0.034 inch.
 - b. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Clips: One-piece fixed or two-piece floating to accommodate thermal movement.
- a. Material: 0.028-inch- nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
4. Panel Coverage: 16 inches.
5. Panel Height: 1.5 inches.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
- B. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226/D 22M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.
- C. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels.
- E. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in 10-foot- long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- F. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, 0.048-inch nominal thickness; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles and with welded top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of 0.060-inch- nominal thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.
 - 1. Insulate roof curb with 1-inch- thick, rigid insulation.
- G. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.
- H. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.

- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 3. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 4. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Extend underlayment into gutter trough. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 - 1. Apply over the roof area indicated below:
 - a. Roof perimeter for a distance up from eaves of 36 inches beyond interior wall line.
 - b. Valleys, from lowest point to highest point, for a distance on each side of 18 inches. Overlap ends of sheets not less than 6 inches.
 - c. Rake edges for a distance of 18 inches.
 - d. Hips and ridges for a distance on each side of 12 inches.
 - e. Roof-to-wall intersections for a distance from wall of 18 inches.

- f. Around dormers, chimneys, skylights, and other penetrating elements for a distance from element of 18 inches.
- B. Felt Underlayment: Apply at locations indicated below, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
 1. Apply on roof not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap over edges of self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches, in shingle fashion to shed water.
- C. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.
- D. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
 4. Watertight Installation:
 - a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
 - b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 - c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.
- I. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.
1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.
 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.

- J. Roof Curbs: Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.
- K. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113.16

SECTION 074293 - SOFFIT PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal soffit panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. General: Provide metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid panels formed with vertical panel edges and a flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. AEP Span; A BlueScope Steel Company.
 - b. Architectural Building Components.
 - c. ATAS International, Inc.
 - d. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 - e. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
 - f. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
 - g. Drexel Metals.
 - h. Englert, Inc.
 - i. Fabral.
 - j. Firestone Building Products.
 - k. Innovative Metals Company, Inc.
 - l. MBCI; a division of NCI Group, Inc.
 - m. McElroy Metal, Inc.
 - n. Merchant & Evans Inc.
 - o. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
 - p. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
 - q. Ultra Seam Incorporated.
2. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
- a. Thickness: 0.032 inch.
 - b. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - c. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - d. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.

- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant types recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal soffit panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - 1. Soffit Framing: As required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 7. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Watertight Installation:
 - 1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
 - 2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 - 3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- E. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 - 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
- F. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling, and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to achieve waterproof performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074293

SECTION 074646 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fiber-cement siding.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
 - 2. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for weather-resistive barriers.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate siding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For fiber-cement siding including related accessories.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type, color, texture, and pattern required.
 - 1. 12-inch- long-by-actual-width Sample of siding.
 - 2. 12-inch- long-by-actual-width Samples of trim and accessories.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of fiber-cement siding.

- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fiber-cement siding.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fiber-cement siding required, from ICC-ES.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of product, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Build mockups for fiber-cement siding including accessories.
 - a. Include outside corner on one end of mockup and inside corner on other end.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including cracking and deforming.
 - b. Deterioration of materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

- A. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - 1. Basis of Design: Hardie Reveal Panel System.
- B. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled according to ASTM C 1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 7/16 inch.
- D. Panel Texture: 96-inch- wide sheets with smooth texture.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.
 - 1. Provide accessories matching color and texture of adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Decorative Accessories: Provide the following fiber-cement decorative accessories as indicated:
 - 1. Moldings and trim.
 - 2. Reveal trim.
- C. Flashing: Provide aluminum flashing complying with Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
 - 1. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: Factory-prime coating.
- D. Fasteners:
 - 1. For fastening to wood, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1 inch into substrate.
 - 2. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1/4 inch, or three screw-threads, into substrate.
 - 3. For fastening fiber cement, use hot-dip galvanized fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiber-cement siding and related accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
 - 1. Do not install damaged components.
 - 2. Install fasteners no more than 24 inches o.c.
- B. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 074646

SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Mechanically fastened thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Cover Board
3. Roof Insulation
4. Vapor retarder.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" apply to work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.

7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Plans, elevations, sections and details for the following:
 1. Base flashings, membrane terminations and attachments to other work not specifically indicated or requested in the drawings.
 2. Tapered insulation layouts including crickets and drain sumps required to provide finish slopes indicated.
 3. Membrane sheet/seam layout indicating underlying steel roof deck orientation (where applicable) and perimeter sheet layout pattern and seam fastening patterns required at corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations to resist specified wind uplift forces.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer technical representative certifying that the roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article and the roofing system, as indicated in the construction documents, meets requirements for roof system warranty specified in "Warranty" Article.
- B. Manufacturers Field Reports for the following:
 1. Start of Installation.
 2. 50% Completion.
 3. Final Inspection.
- C. Warranties: Sample of special warranties with all fields (blanks) filled in.
- D. Installers Qualifications:
 1. Installer Certificates: Signed by roofing system manufacturer certifying that Installer is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacturer to install roofing system and receive specified warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Manual: For roofing system and components.
 1. As part of submittal provide roof maintenance training seminar to facility maintenance personnel discussing required maintenance to keep warranty in force.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm with 5-years (minimum) documented experience installing thermoplastic membrane systems that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's warranty. Submit the following qualification data:
 - 1. Installers Certificate: Issued and signed by roof system manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roofing materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources.
 - 1. Store bundles of insulation and cover board on pallets, sleepers or "stickers" away from direct contact with ground or roof surface.
 - 2. Remove shrink wrap packaging from insulation and cover board materials and cover with breathable canvas tarps;
 - a. NOTE: Insulation and/or cover board materials that are wet or show evidence of being previously wetted shall be removed from the project site and replaced with new materials at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - 3. Weigh of/tie-down materials to avoid displacement by wind
 - 4. Comply with insulation and cover board manufacturer's written instructions for handling, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 PROJECT HOUSE-KEEPING

- A. Construction related demolition debris is to be removed from the project site or stored in approved containers (dumpsters) on a daily basis.
- B. Broom clean sidewalks and driveways on an on-going basis to prevent construction related debris from migrating into the facility from user traffic.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty includes roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, roofing accessories, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, vapor retarders, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation, fasteners and cover board for roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or manufacturer approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.

- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- A. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7-10 for design wind speed of 120 miles per hour (3-second gust).
- B. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class B; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- C. Vapor Retarders/Barriers: Details in the contract drawings illustrate installation of continuous vapor retarder/barrier membranes on the warm side of all exterior building envelope (roof / ceiling/wall/foundation) insulation packages. All membrane penetrations, side laps, terminations and transitions of vapor retarder/barrier membranes are to be sealed air and moisture vapor tight using methods and materials that will not allow air or moisture vapor to ex-filtrate from building interiors through finished vapor retarder membranes into insulation cavities or to the building exterior.
 - 1. All details may not illustrate or indicate specific membrane sealing materials, techniques or methods. Contractor(s) and their personnel responsible for installing vapor retarder/barrier membranes shall review all applicable drawings and construction types and provide installation methods and materials appropriate to provide a permanent air and moisture-vapor tight seal for all substrates encountered on the project and as required to meet the stated finished performance criteria.
 - a. Lack of experience or understanding of vapor retarder/barrier function on the part of the Contractor or their personnel will not be grounds for accepting substandard installation and/or sealing of vapor retarder/barrier membranes.

2.1 TPO SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE ROOFING

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. TPO Membrane - Fabric-Reinforced Thermoplastic Polyolefin Sheet: ASTM D 6878, internally fabric or scrim reinforced, uniform, flexible TPO sheet..
 - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated "Sure-Weld TPO".
 - 1) Thickness: 60 mils.
 - 2) Exposed Face Color: White.
 - b. Firestone Building Products Company "UltraPly TPO".
 - 1) Thickness: 60 mils.
 - 2) Exposed Face Color: White.

- c. GAF Materials Corporation “EverGuard TPO 60 mil”.
 - 1) Thickness: 60 mils.
 - 2) Exposed Face Color: White.
- d. GenFlex Roofing Systems “EZ TPO”.
 - 1) Thickness: 60 mils.
 - 2) Exposed Face Color: White.
- e. Versico Incorporated “VersiWeld TPO”.
 - 1) Thickness: 60 mils.
 - 2) Exposed Face Color: White.

2.2 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.
 - 1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, 55 mils thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Non-Curing Sealant: Butyl based non-curing, non-skinning sealant for use as a gasketing material in compression type fittings/applications.
 - 1. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated “Water Cut-off Mastic”.
 - 2. Firestone Building Products “Water Block”.
 - 3. Approved Equal.
- E. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- F. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roofing to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- G. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.3 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Vapor Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 10 mils thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm.
- B. Vapor Retarder Tape: Heavy duty cloth tape with aggressive natural rubber pressure-sensitive adhesive designed to adhere to a variety of surfaces under a wide variety of temperatures. Tested according to UL 723.
 - 1. "Gorilla Tape" as manufactured by The Gorilla Glue Company (Phone 800-966-3458).
 - 2. Armor Tough" (product Code AC617) as manufactured by Intertape Polymer Group (Phone 800-474-8273).
- C. Vapor Retarder Termination Bar: Semi-flexible plastic termination bar used for mechanically securing vapor retarder membrane:
 - 1. Stego Industries "Stego Term Bar".
 - 2. Approved Equal.
 - a. Termination Bar Fasteners: Corrosion resistant threaded fasteners of type required for substrates encountered.
- D. Vapor Retarder Mastic/Sealant: Non-curing, butly based sealant for use in compression-type terminations:
 - 1. Carlisle "Sure-Seal Water Cut-Off Mastic".
 - 2. Firestone "Water-Block Seal (S-20)".
 - 3. Approved Equal.

2.4 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated.
- B. Molded Polystyrene Board, Type XV: ASTM C 578, Type XV, 60-psi minimum compressive strength.
 - 1. With drainage channels and integral nailer board.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACH Foam Technologies, LLC.
 - b. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - c. Insulfoam LLC; a Carlisle company.
 - d. Plymouth Foam, Inc.
 - 3. R-19 thickness.

- C. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
 - 1. Flat Stock: Provide thickness indicated in Drawings.
 - 2. Tapered Insulation & Crickets: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slopes indicated in Drawings.
- D. Provide preformed tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with roofing.
- A. Insulation Gap Filler: One part polyurethane foam:
 - 1. Dow Chemical "Great Stuff Pro".
 - 2. Dow Chemical "Froth Pack".
 - 3. Fomo Products, Inc. "Handi Foam".
 - 4. Approved Equal.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

2.6 COVER BOARD

- A. Cover Board: ASTM C 1177, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate; or ASTM C 1278, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; "DensDeck", 1/4 inch thickness.
 - b. United States Gypsum Company; "Securock", 1/4 inch thickness.
 - c. Approved Equal.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel threaded fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening cover boards to substrates encountered on this project.

2.7 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work:
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

3.4 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Vapor Retarder Membrane: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches and 6 inches, respectively.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at side laps, end laps, terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.
 - 1. Side laps / End Laps: Seal using specified tape.
 - 2. Terminations (rising walls and curbs): Seal using specified termination bar and mastic/sealant.
 - 3. Penetrations (roof drains, pipes, etc.): Seal using specified tape

3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Flat Stock Insulation (over sloped roof deck): Loose lay flat stock insulation in two layers:
 - 1. Install bottom layer (1st-layer) of insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows 12-inches minimum.
 - a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations
 - b. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with specified spray foam.
 - 2. Install top layer (2nd-layer) of insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows 12-inches minimum. Stagger all joints in top layer of insulation 12-inches (minimum) from underlying joint in 1st layer of insulation.
 - a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations
 - b. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with specified spray foam.
 - 3. Install tapered insulation crickets over flat stock insulation where indicated for slope to drains.
- D. Tapered insulation (over dead-level roof decks): Loose lay tapered insulation in two layers (minimum) under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
 - 1. Install bottom layer (1st-layer-flat stock) of insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows 12-inches minimum.
 - a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - b. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with specified spray foam.
 - 2. Install succeeding layers over bottom layer of insulation with long joints of insulation staggered from underlying layers 12-inches (minimum).
 - a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations
 - b. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with specified spray foam.
- E. COVER BOARD INSTALLATION
- F. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck.

3.6 MECHANICALLY FASTENED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Mechanically fasten roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing and allow to relax before retaining.
- B. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align roofing, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Mechanically fasten or adhere roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- E. Apply roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- F. In-Seam Attachment: Secure one edge of TPO sheet using fastening plates or metal battens centered within seam, and mechanically fasten TPO sheet to roof deck.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet.
 - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
 - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that do not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread non-curing sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roofing in place with clamping ring.

3.7 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.8 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Monitoring: Roofing Contractor shall assign competent supervisor to monitor installation of the roofing system on a daily basis to insure quality of membrane installation. Finished roof and base flashing membranes shall lay flat without wrinkles or "puckers".
 - 1. Roof and/or base flashing membranes with wrinkles or puckers shall be removed and replaced with new membrane at no cost to the Owner.
- B. Manufacturers Periodic Roof Inspection: Roofing Contractor shall engage Roof System Manufacturers technical field representative to perform periodic site inspections at the following intervals during construction and submit field report to the Architect:
 - 1. Start of installation of insulation, cover board and membrane.
 - 2. 50% completion of roof membrane system.
 - 3. Final Roof Inspection: 100% completion of roof system installation (Warranty Inspection).
 - a. Notify Architect and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of final roof inspection.

3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during construction period. In no case shall construction related work be done over, or construction related traffic be routed over finished roof areas without protection being placed over finished roof membrane.
 - 1. Protection shall consist of the following (bottom -to- top):
 - a. 1-inch expanded polystyrene (EPS).
 - b. 10-mil polyethylene.
 - c. ½-inch plywood.
 - d. Weigh down all protection materials to prevent displacement by wind.
 - 2. If, in the Architects opinion, care was not taken by the Contractor to protect roof membrane systems from construction related damage; roof systems in question shall be removed and replace with new systems at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, remove protection and inspect membrane and components for damage.

- a. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean all roofing related overspray, spillage, dust and debris from roof top equipment and adjacent roof areas or adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected equipment or construction.

3.11 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS _____ of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
 1. Owner: **<Insert name of Owner>**.
 2. Address: **<Insert address>**.
 3. Building Name/Type: **<Insert information>**.
 4. Address: **<Insert address>**.
 5. Area of Work: **<Insert information>**.
 6. Acceptance Date: _____.
 7. Warranty Period: **<Insert time>**.
 8. Expiration Date: _____.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
 1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. lightning;
 - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding **<Insert mph (m/sec)>**;
 - c. fire;
 - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION 075423

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
- 2. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- 3. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
- 2. Section 075323 "Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" for installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- 2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
- 3. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
 - a. Show integration of sheet metal flashing and trim components into adjacent wall and/or openings waterproofing drainage plane.
7. Include details of edge conditions, including counter flashings as applicable.
8. Include details of special conditions.
 - a. Refer to Roof Plan for locations.
9. Include details of connections to adjoining work and integration into waterproofing drainage plane.
10. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Color Chart: Illustrating full range of colors available for sheet metal flashing and trim for selection by Architect.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

- B. Installation Coordination: Contractors responsible for installation sheet metal flashing and trim components specified in this section are to integrate the installation of their components with the installation of adjacent exterior building vapor/air/moisture barriers and building opening components to insure complete water/air/vapor tight assembly.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockups for the following:
 - a. Copings (Parapet Cap):
 - 1) Outside corner.
 - 2) Special Coping terminations and transitions specifically called out on the roof plan for shop drawing submittal.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet according to ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
 - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
 - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish (Pre Finished):
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as

recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
 - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - 2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape minimum 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant (Non Curing): ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for compression type expansion joints with limited movement.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 - 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 - 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible.
 - a. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.

- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
 - 1. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
 - 1. Metal gauge of cleat as indicated in drawings
- F. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.5 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts to dimensions indicated, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from same material as downspouts and anchors. Shop fabricate elbows.
- B. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers to dimensions required, with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch-wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches beyond tapered strip into field of roof. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel or Prefinished Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel:
 - a. Thickness: 24 gauge.
- C. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape required, complete with outlet tubes, exterior flange trim and built-in overflows. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel or Prefinished Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel:
 - a. Thickness: 24 gauge.

2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, fasten and seal watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
 - 1. Coping (Parapet Cap) Profile: Refer to Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate.

3. Fabricate from the Following Materials:

1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel or Prefinished Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel:

- a. Thickness: 24 gauge.

B. Counterflashing:

1. Profile: Refer to Drawings.

2. Joint Style: Overlap.

3. Fabricate from the following materials:

- a. Prefinished Galvanized Steel or Prefinished Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel

- b. Thickness: 24 gauge.

C. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate to profiles indicated from the following materials:

1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel or Prefinished Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel:

- a. Thickness: 24 gauge.

2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb and similar flashings to extend beyond wall openings as indicated and into openings as required to integrate with opening components and wall system drainage planes. Form head and sill flashing with end dams which integrate into jamb metal flashings. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel or Prefinished Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel:

- a. Thickness: 24 gauge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.

2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

3. Verify that exterior wall vapor barrier (self adhering membrane), opening membrane flashings, air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrates to prevent vapor, air infiltration or water penetration.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
 - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
 - 3. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 - 4. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
 - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
 - 1. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in where necessary for strength.

3.3 ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter membrane flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.

- B. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.
 - 1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
 - 2. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
 - 1. Seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
- D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall, with elevation of conductor head rim equal to top of scupper discharge opening.

3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 6-inch centers.
 - 2. Anchor interior leg of coping with washers and screw fasteners through slotted holes at 12 inch centers.
- C. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing membranes. Fabricate and install counterflashing to fit tightly over base flashing membranes. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches. Secure in waterproof manner by means of threaded fasteners with gasketed washers at 12-inch centers. Neatly field miner and seal all inside/outside corners.

3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend beyond and into wall openings as indicated.
 - 1. Integrate metal flashings with adjacent wall vapor, air and moisture barriers.

3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof hatches.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
 - 2. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for safety railing systems not attached to roof-hatch curbs.
 - 3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
 - 4. Section 237413 "Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units" for standard curbs specified with rooftop units.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:

1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
4. Required clearances.

- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

- B. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 ROOF HATCH

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Acudor Products, Inc.
- b. AES Industries, Inc.
- c. Babcock-Davis.
- d. Bilco Company (The).
- e. Bristolite Daylighting Systems, Inc.
- f. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
- g. Dur-Red Products.
- h. Hi Pro International, Inc.
- i. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
- j. KCC International Inc.
- k. Lexcor; a division of Luxsuo corp.
- l. Metallic Products Corp.
- m. Milcor; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- n. Natural Daylighting Systems.
- o. O'Keeffe's Inc.
- p. Pate Company (The).
- q. Precision Ladders, LLC.
- r. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).

- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 36 by 36 inches.

- C. Loads: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal uplift load.

- D. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.

1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
2. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- E. Construction:

1. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate board.
 - a. R-Value: 12.0 according to ASTM C 1363.
2. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.

3. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
 4. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 6. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
 7. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height that is tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surfaces of perimeter curb are level. Equip hatch with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
- F. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, galvanized-steel spring latch with turn handles, galvanized-steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
- G. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a complete installation; attached to roof hatch and complying with 29 CFR 1910.23 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
 2. Posts and Rails: Galvanized-steel pipe, 1-1/4 inches in diameter or galvanized-steel tube, 1-5/8 inches in diameter.
 3. Maximum Opening Size: System constructed to prevent passage of a sphere 21 inches in diameter.
 4. Chain Passway Barrier: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
 5. Post and Rail Tops and Ends: Weather resistant, closed or plugged with prefabricated end fittings.
 6. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members.
 7. Fabricate joints exposed to weather to be watertight.
 8. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, finished to match railing system.
 9. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
 - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof-Hatch Installation:
 - 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
 - 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
- D. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Urethane joint sealants.
- 2. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
- 3. Latex joint sealants.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 07 Section "Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing."
- 2. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

- B. Samples Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:

- 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
- 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
- 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
- 4. Joint-sealant color.

- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Sealant Installer with a minimum 5-years experience in the sizing, shaping, preparation, application and finishing (tooling) of sealant joints.

- 1. Lack of training or skill on the part of the sealant installer / applicator shall not be grounds for accepting sloppy or substandard work

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:
 - 1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
 - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. GENERAL
 - 1. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

2. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- B. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where elastomeric sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- C. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP1.
 - b. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 1a.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 116.
 - d. Approved equal.

2.3 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C, closed-cell material with a surface skin and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.

3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form

smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sealant Installer shall assign competent personnel to monitor the sizing, shaping, preparation, application and finishing (tooling) of sealants.
 1. Sealant joints not sized, shaped, prepared, applied or finished per manufacturers written requirements or referenced standards shall be removed and replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - a. Exposed sealant joints, that in the Architects opinion, present a sloppy appearance shall be removed and replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - b. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Single-component, nonsag, urethane.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Single-component, nonsag, urethane.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces not subject to significant movement.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Perimeter joints between exterior wall surfaces and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
 - b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Single-Component, nonsag, urethane.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical gypsum wall board surfaces not subject to significant movement.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between interior gypsum wall board wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and louvers.

- b. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex.
- 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hollow-metal work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.

3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 7. Details of accessories.
 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- C. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow-metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final Door Hardware Schedule.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of hollow-metal door and frame assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal work palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal work vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow-metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Provide an assembly with gaskets listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.

2.3 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct interior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
 2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - c. Face: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
 - f. Core: Kraft-paper honeycomb.
 3. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 4. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 EXTERIOR HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct exterior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 3..
 1. Physical Performance: Level A according to SDI A250.4.
 2. Doors:

- a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
 - f. Core: Polyisocyanurate.
- 1) Thermal-Rated Doors: Provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 2.1 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu when tested according to ASTM C 1363.

3. Frames:

- a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
- b. Construction: Full profile welded.

4. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 BORROWED LITES

- A. Hollow-metal frames of metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
- B. Construction: Knocked down.

2.6 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.
3. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.

B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, and as follows:

1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.

2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- I. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- J. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Hollow-Metal Doors:
 - 1. Steel-Stiffened Door Cores: Provide minimum thickness 0.026 inch, steel vertical stiffeners of same material as face sheets extending full-door height, with vertical webs

- spaced not more than 6 inches apart. Spot weld to face sheets no more than 5 inches o.c. Fill spaces between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.
2. Fire Door Cores: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
 3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Bevel edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
 4. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with inverted closures, except provide flush closures at exterior doors of same material as face sheets.
 5. Bottom Edge Closures: Close bottom edges of doors with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
 6. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
 7. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.
- C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
1. Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
 4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
 5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 16 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c., to match coursing, and as follows:
 - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
 - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
 - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.

- c. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches o.c.
6. Head Anchors: Two anchors per head for frames more than 42 inches wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and edge channels from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.
- F. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and louvers where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with mitered hairline joints.
 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
 4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
 5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.

2.9 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

2.10 ACCESSORIES

- A. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelites, borrowed lites, and other openings, of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - c. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 - d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
 - e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - f. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- D. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 062023 "Interior Finish Carpentry" for wood door frames.
2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for field finishing doors.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
 1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
 2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
 4. Undercuts.
 5. Requirements for veneer matching.
 6. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
 7. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- B. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
 - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Exterior Doors: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 4. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Five.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. ABS-American Building Supply- Doormerica.
 2. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
 3. Ampco Products, LLC.
 4. Chappell Door Co.
 5. Eggers Industries.
 6. General Veneer Manufacturing Co.
 7. Graham Wood Doors; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 8. Haley Brothers, Inc.
 9. Ipik Door Company.
 10. Lambton Doors.
 11. Marlite.
 12. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
 13. Mohawk Flush Doors, Inc.
 14. Oregon Door.
 15. Oshkosh Door Company.
 16. Poncraft Door Company.
 17. Vancouver Door Company.
 18. VT Industries, Inc.

2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Labels indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
 2. Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in quality standard and additional requirements beyond those of quality standard. Comply with those selections and requirements in addition to quality standard.
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.
- C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252.
1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.

2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
 3. Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
 4. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
- D. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control, based on testing according to UL 1784.
- E. Particleboard-Core Doors:
1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1.
 2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
 3. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.
- F. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:
1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
 - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf.
- G. Mineral-Core Doors:
1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
 2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
 3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - a. Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf per WDMA T.M.-10.
- 2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH
- A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
1. Grade: Premium, with Grade AA faces.
 2. Species: Maple.
 3. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
 4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Pleasing match.
 5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
 6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.

7. Exposed Vertical Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species - edge Type A.
8. Core: Particleboard.
9. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
10. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
 1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
 2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

2.5 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Doors for Transparent Finish: Shop prime faces and all four edges with stain (if required), other required pretreatments, and first coat of finish as specified in Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing." Seal edges of cutouts and mortises with first coat of finish.

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Transparent Finish:
 1. Grade: Premium.
 2. Finish: AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" System 10, UV curable, water based or System 11, catalyzed polyurethane.
 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 4. Effect: Open-grain finish.
 5. Sheen: Semigloss.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
 - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
 - 1. Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
 - 2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
 - 1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
 - b. 2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
 - 2. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior storefront framing.
 - 2. Storefront framing for punched openings.
 - 3. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
 - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - 2. Anchorage.
 - 3. Expansion provisions.
 - 4. Glazing.
 - 5. Flashing and drainage.
- E. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: As shown in Section 087100 – Door Hardware. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.
- C. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Quality-Control Program: Developed specifically for Project, including fabrication and installation, according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401. Include periodic quality-control reports.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.8 MOCKUPS

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Testing shall be performed on mockups according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch.
 - a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch clearance between framing members and operable units.

3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, as follows:
 - a. Perpendicular to Plane of Wall: No greater than 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches or 1/175 times span, for spans less than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches.
- E. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- F. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
 1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
 2. Entrance Doors:
 - a. Pair of Doors: Maximum air leakage of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
 - b. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of 0.5 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 10 lbf/sq. ft..
- H. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Test according to AAMA 501.1 as follows:
 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 10 lbf/sq. ft..
 2. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating assemblies or water appearing on assemblies' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters, or water that is drained to exterior.
- I. Interstory Drift: Accommodate design displacement of adjacent stories indicated.
 1. Test Performance: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.4 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.

- J. Seismic Performance: Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Seismic Drift Causing Glass Fallout: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.6 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.
 - 2. Vertical Interstory Movement: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.7 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.
- K. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
 - 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
 - 2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.35 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 - 3. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 15 as determined according to NFRC 500.
- L. Noise Reduction: Test according to ASTM E 90, with ratings determined by ASTM E 1332, as follows.
 - 1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 30.
- M. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 3.
 - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within 30 feet of grade.
- N. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
 - 2. Thermal Cycling: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
 - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
 - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: -20 deg F.
 - c. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products the following:
 - 1. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope™.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing venting windows and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
 - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 - 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
 - 4. Finish: Color anodic finish.
 - 5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- B. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
 - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
 - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 - 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
 - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 VENTING WINDOWS

- A. Aluminum Windows: Manufacturer's standard units, complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, with self-flashing mounting fins, and as follows:
 - 1. Window Type: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Minimum Performance Class: AW.
 - 3. Minimum Performance Grade: 40.
 - 4. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, but not less than 0.064-inch thickness at any location for main frame and sash members.
 - a. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate window units with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier; located between exterior materials

and window members exposed on interior side; in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.

5. Mullions: Between adjacent windows, fabricated of extruded aluminum matching finish of window units.
 6. Fasteners, Anchors, and Clips: Nonmagnetic stainless steel, aluminum, or other noncorrosive material, compatible with aluminum window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components of window units. Fasteners shall not be exposed, except for attaching hardware.
 - a. Reinforcement: Where fasteners screw-anchor into aluminum less than 0.128 inch thick, reinforce interior with aluminum or nonmagnetic stainless steel to receive screw threads, or provide standard, noncorrosive, pressed-in, spline grommet nuts.
 7. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard; of aluminum, stainless steel, die-cast steel, malleable iron, or bronze; including the following:
 - a. Cam-action sweep sash lock and keeper at meeting rails.
 - b. Spring-loaded, snap-type lock at jambs.
 - c. Steel or bronze operating arms.
 8. Insect Screens: Provide removable insect screen on each operable exterior sash, with screen frame finished to match window unit, complying with SMA 1004 or SMA 1201, and as follows:
 - a. Fabric: Manufacturer's standard aluminum wire fabric or glass-fiber mesh fabric.
- B. Glazing: Same as adjacent aluminum-framed entrances and storefront glazing.
- C. Finish: Match adjacent aluminum-framed entrances and storefront finish.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 2. Door Design: Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width.
 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

2.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

2.7 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
 - 1. Color: Dark bronze.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.

5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
7. Provide $\frac{3}{4}$ " – 1" space in rough-opening dimensions.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

G. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

H. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.

4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
- C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware:
 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:

- a. Swinging doors.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for astragals provided as part of labeled fire-rated assemblies and for door silencers provided as part of hollow-metal frames.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Floor-Recessed Door Hardware: Coordinate layout and installation with floor construction.

- 1. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.

- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- B. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Incorporate conference decisions into keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:

- a. Flow of traffic and degree of security required.
- b. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
- c. Requirements for key control system.
- d. Requirements for access control.
- e. Address for delivery of keys.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Coordinate door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
 1. Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
 2. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in door hardware schedule in the Contract Documents.
 3. Content: Include the following information:
 - a. Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, size, and material of each door and frame.
 - b. Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
 - c. Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
 - d. Description of electrified door hardware sequences of operation and interfaces with other building control systems.
 - e. Fastenings and other installation information.
 - f. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and designations contained in door hardware schedule.
 - g. Mounting locations for door hardware.
 - h. List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.
- C. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of electrified door hardware.

1. Certify that door hardware for use on each type and size of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.

B. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Schedules: Final door hardware and keying schedule.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and of an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.

C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

D. Deliver keys and permanent cores to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.

b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.

- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise indicated below:
 - a. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated doors are indicated, provide door hardware complying with NFPA 80 that is listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that complies with requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
 1. Air Leakage Rate: Maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. at the tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg of water.
- C. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- D. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".
 1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
 2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
 - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
 - b. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
 4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.

2.3 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Provide products for each door that comply with requirements indicated in Part 2 and door hardware schedule.
 - 1. Door hardware is scheduled in Part 3.

2.4 HINGES

- A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.

2.5 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
 - 1. Bored Locks: Minimum 1/2-inch latchbolt throw.
 - 2. Deadbolts: Minimum 1-inch bolt throw.
- C. Lock Backset: 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.
 - 1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.
- E. Bored Locks: BHMA A156.2; Grade 1; Series 4000.

2.6 AUXILIARY LOCKS

- A. Bored Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.36: Grade 1; with strike that suits frame.

2.7 MANUAL FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16; minimum 3/4-inch throw; designed for mortising into door edge.

2.8 EXIT DEVICES AND AUXILIARY ITEMS

- A. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: BHMA A156.3.

2.9 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver. Provide cylinder from same manufacturer of locking devices.
- B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.
 - 1. Core Type: Removable.
- C. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.
- D. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

2.10 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.
 - 1. Great-Grand Master Key System: Change keys, a master key, a grand master key, and a great-grand master key operate cylinders.
 - a. Provide three cylinder change keys and five each of master, grand master, and great-grand master keys.
- B. Keys: Nickel silver.
 - 1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
 - a. Notation: Information to be furnished by Owner.

2.11 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Key Control Cabinet: BHMA A156.28; metal cabinet with baked-enamel finish; containing key-holding hooks, labels, two sets of key tags with self-locking key holders, key-gathering envelopes, and temporary and permanent markers; with key capacity of 150 percent of the number of locks.
 - 1. Wall-Mounted Cabinet: Grade 1 cabinet with hinged-panel door equipped with key-holding panels and pin-tumbler cylinder door lock.
- B. Key Lock Boxes: Designed for storage of 10 keys.

2.12 ACCESSORIES FOR PAIRS OF DOORS

- A. Astragals: BHMA A156.22.

2.13 SURFACE CLOSERS

- A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

2.14 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16.

2.15 ELECTROMAGNETIC STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Electromagnetic Door Holders: BHMA A156.15, Grade 1; wall-mounted electromagnetic single unit with strike plate attached to swinging door; coordinated with fire detectors and interface with fire-alarm system for labeled fire-rated door assemblies.

2.16 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.

2.17 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- B. Maximum Air Leakage: When tested according to ASTM E 283 with tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg, as follows:
 - 1. Smoke-Rated Gasketing: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.
 - 2. Gasketing on Single Doors: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.
 - 3. Gasketing on Double Doors: 0.50 cfm per foot of door opening.

2.18 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.

2.19 FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rating labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
 - 1. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Applications:
 - a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:
 - 1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames.
 - 2) Strike plates to frames.
 - 3) Closers to doors and frames.
 - 3. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

2.20 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
 - 1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
 - 2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
 - 1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by Owner.
 - 2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- E. Key Control System:

1. Key Control Cabinet: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
 2. Key Lock Boxes: Install where indicated or approved by Architect to provide controlled access for fire and medical emergency personnel.
- F. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.
- H. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.
- I. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- J. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 70 degrees and so that closing time complies with accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware.

3.8 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

Note-See drawings for Pairs of doors which will double the hardware.

Hardware Group # 1

Hinge: Roton 1200-600XHD (continuous hinge)
Lock: Von Duprin 9827-992L-06 (panic surface mounted vertical rod)
Closer: LCN P4040-3049CNS (parallel arm with stop)
Stop: na
Weather-strip: Pemko 4301CRL (surface door bottom), Pemko 45041DSB
(head & jamb)
Threshold: Pemko 278x224D
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 2

Hinge: Roton 1200-600XHD (continuous hinge)
Lock: Push / Pull by door manufacturer
Closer: LCN P4040 (parallel arm)
Stop: na
Weather-strip: by door manufacturer (astragal, head & jamb seal)
Threshold: na
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 3

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 1 ½ pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3351-NZD-626 (office)
Closer: na
Stop: Ives WS402CCV
Weather-strip: Pemko S88D (head & jamb seal)
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 4

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 1 ½ pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3310-NZD-626 (passage)
Closer: na
Stop: Glynn Johnson 90-4-H-sp28 (overhead stop)
Weather-strip: na
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 5

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 1 ½ pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3320-NZD-626 (privacy)
Closer: na
Stop: Ives WS402CCV
Weather-strip: Pemko S88D (head & jamb seal)
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 6

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 1 ½ pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3355-NZD-626 (classroom)
Closer: na
Stop: Glynn Johnson 90-4-H-sp28 (overhead stop)
Weather-strip: na
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 7

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 1 ½ pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3355-NZD-626 (classroom) & Corbin
Russwin CL3370-NZD-626 (dummy)
Closer: na
Stop: Glynn Johnson 90-4-H-sp28 (overhead stop)
Weather-strip: na
Miscellaneous: Ives 265 Flush Bolts (top & bottom)
Notes: 'dummy' and flush bolts on second door

Hardware Group # 8

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 1 ½ pair
Lock: Ives 8302-0-US26D-6x16-F (push plate and pull)
Closer: LCN P4040 (parallel arm)
Stop: Ives WS402CCV
Weather-strip: na
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 9

Hinge: Roton 1200-600XHD (continuous hinge)
Lock: Von Duprin 98-992L-06 (panic rim device)
Closer: LCN P4040-3049CNS (parallel arm with stop)
Stop: na
Weather-strip: Pemko 4301CRL (surface door bottom), Pemko 45041DSB
(head & jamb)
Threshold: Pemko 278x224D
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 10

Hinge: Roton 1200-600XHD (continuous hinge)
Lock: Von Duprin 98-992L-06 (panic rim device)
Closer: LCN P4040-3049CNS (parallel arm with stop)
Stop: na
Weather-strip: Pemko S88D (head & jamb smoke seal)
Threshold: na
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 11

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 3 pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3351-NZD-626 (office)
Closer: na
Stop: Glynn Johnson 90-4-H-sp28 (overhead stop)
Weather-strip: Pemko 4301CRL (surface door bottom), Pemko 45041DSB
(head & jamb)
Threshold: Pemko 277D
Miscellaneous: na
Notes: na

Hardware Group # 12

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 3 pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3351-NZD-626 (office)
Closer: na
Stop: Glynn Johnson 90-4-H-sp28 (overhead stop)
Weather-strip: Pemko 4301CRL (surface door bottom), Pemko 45041DSB
(head & jamb)
Threshold: Pemko 278x224D
Miscellaneous: Ives 265 Flush Bolts (top & bottom)
Notes: 'dummy' and flush bolts on second door

Hardware Group # 13

Hinge: Hager BB1168- 4 ½ x 4 ½ - 3 pair
Lock: Corbin Russwin CL3351-NZD-626 (office)
Closer: na
Stop: Glynn Johnson 90-4-H-sp28 (overhead stop)
Weather-strip: Pemko 4301CRL (surface door bottom), Pemko 45041DSB
(head & jamb)
Threshold: Pemko 278x224D
Miscellaneous: na

END OF SECTION 087100

SECTION 087113 - AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Low-energy door operators for swinging doors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AAADM: American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers.
- B. Activation Device: A control that, when actuated, sends an electrical signal to the door operator to open the door.
- C. Double-Egress (Doors): A pair of doors that simultaneously swing with the two doors moving in opposite directions with no mullion between them.
- D. Double-Swing (Doors): A pair of doors that swing with the two doors moving in opposite directions with a mullion between them; each door functioning as a single-swing door.
- E. Safety Device: A control that, to avoid injury, prevents a door from opening or closing.
- F. For automatic door terminology, see BHMA A156.10 and BHMA A156.19 for definitions of terms.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of recesses in concrete floors for recessed control mats that control automatic door operators. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified elsewhere.
- B. Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared and reinforced for installing automatic door operators.
- C. Coordinate hardware for doors with operators to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish.

- D. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic door operators with connections to power supplies and access-control system.
- E. Pneumatic System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic door operators and power units with compressed-air piping.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for automatic door operators.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For automatic door operators.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware mounting heights, and attachment details.
 - 2. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Indicate locations of activation and safety devices.
 - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 5. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details for guide rails.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of automatic door operator.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For automatic door operators, safety devices, and control systems, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project and who employs a Certified Inspector.
 - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
- B. Certified Inspector Qualifications: Certified by AAADM.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of automatic door operators that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Faulty or sporadic operation of automatic door operator, including controls.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering or use.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Besam Entrance Solutions; ASSA ABLOY.
 - 2. Door Motion Technologies, Inc.
 - 3. DORMA USA, Inc.
 - 4. Hager Companies.
 - 5. Horton Automatics; a division of Overhead Door Corporation.
 - 6. Hunter Automatics Inc.
 - 7. KM Systems, Inc.
 - 8. LCN; an Allegion brand.
 - 9. NABCO Entrances, Inc.
 - 10. record-usa.
 - 11. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; ASSA ABLOY.
 - 12. Sierra Automatic Doors, Inc.
 - 13. Stanley Access Technologies.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic door operators, including activation and safety devices, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS, GENERAL

- A. General: Provide operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement; for condition of exposure; and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for occupancy type indicated; and according to UL 325. Coordinate operator mechanisms with door operation, hinges, and activation and safety devices.
 - 1. Wind Load: Provide door operators on exterior doors that will open and close doors and maintain them in fully closed position when subjected to wind loads.
- B. Electromechanical Operating System: Self-contained unit powered by permanent-magnet dc motor; with closing speed controlled mechanically by gear train and dynamically by braking action of electric motor, connections for power and activation- and safety-device wiring, and manual operation including spring closing when power is off.
- C. Hinges: See Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for hinge type for each door that door operator shall accommodate.
- D. Housing for Overhead Concealed Operators: Fabricated from minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded or formed aluminum and extending full width of door opening including door jambs to conceal door operators and controls. Provide hinged or removable access panels for service and adjustment of door operators and controls. Secure panels to prevent unauthorized access.
- E. Cover for Surface-Mounted Operators: Fabricated from 0.125-inch- thick, extruded or formed aluminum; manufacturer's standard width; with enclosed end caps, provision for maintenance access, and fasteners concealed when door is in closed position.
- F. Brackets and Reinforcements: Fabricated from aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 LOW-ENERGY DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.19.
- B. Performance Requirements:
 - 1. Opening Force if Power Fails: Not more than 15 lbf required to release latch if provided, not more than 30 lbf required to manually set door in motion, and not more than 15 lbf required to fully open door.
 - 2. Entrapment-Prevention Force: Not more than 15 lbf required to prevent stopped door from closing or opening.
- C. Configuration: Operator to control single swinging door.
 - 1. Traffic Pattern: One way.
 - 2. Operator Mounting: Surface.

- D. Operation: Power opening and spring closing. Provide time delay for door to remain open before initiating closing cycle as required by BHMA A156.19. When not in automatic mode, door operator shall function as manual door closer, with or without electrical power.
- E. Operating System: Electromechanical.
- F. Microprocessor Control Unit: Solid-state controller.
- G. Features:
 - 1. Adjustable opening and closing speed.
 - 2. Adjustable opening and closing force.
 - 3. Adjustable backcheck.
 - 4. Adjustable hold-open time from zero to 30 seconds.
 - 5. Adjustable time delay.
 - 6. Adjustable acceleration.
 - 7. Obstruction recycle.
 - 8. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator.
- H. Activation Device: Wireless push-button switch on each side of door to activate door operator.
- I. Exposed Finish: Finish matching door and frame.
 - 1. Color: Medium bronze.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - 1. Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
 - 2. Sheet: ASTM B 209.
- B. Fasteners and Accessories: Corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

2.5 CONTROLS

- A. General: Provide controls, including activation and safety devices, according to BHMA standards; for condition of exposure; and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for occupancy type indicated. Coordinate activation and safety devices with door operation and door operator mechanisms.
- B. Push-Button Switch: Momentary-contact door control switch with one red-button actuator; enclosed in nominal 4-by-4-inch junction box.
 - 1. Provide faceplate engraved with "Press to Open" text and with international symbol of accessibility in contrasting color.

2. Provide blue plastic cover engraved with "Press Button to Open" in white text and with international symbol of accessibility.
 3. Mounting: As indicated on Drawings.
 4. Faceplate Material: Stainless steel as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Wireless or Remote Radio-Control Switch: Radio-control system consisting of header-mounted receiver and wall-mounted transmitter switch.
1. Wall-Mounted Transmitter Switch: One red-button, momentary-contact actuator enclosed in 4-by-4-inch junction box. Provide blue plastic cover engraved with "Press Button to Open" in white text and with international symbol of accessibility.
- D. Electrical Interlocks: Unless units are equipped with self-protecting devices or circuits, provide electrical interlocks to prevent activation of operator when door is locked, latched, or bolted.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fabricate automatic door operators to comply with indicated standards.
- B. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.
- C. Fabricate exterior components to drain condensation and water passing joints within operator enclosure to the exterior.
- D. Use concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use countersunk Phillips flat-head machine screws, finished to match operator.
- E. Provide metal cladding, completely covering visible surfaces before shipment to Project site. Fabricate cladding with concealed fasteners and connection devices, with accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion, and with allowance for thermal expansion at exterior doors.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Signage: As required by cited BHMA standard for type of door and its operation.
 1. Application Process: Operator manufacturer's standard process.
 2. Provide sign materials with instructions for field application when operators are installed.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, door and frame preparation and reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of automatic door operators.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical systems to verify actual locations of power connections before automatic door operator installation.
- C. Verify that full-height finger guards are installed at each door with pivot hinges where door has a clearance at hinge side greater than 1/4 inch and less than 3/4 inch with door in any position.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install automatic door operators according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for type of door operation and direction of pedestrian travel, including signage, controls, wiring, remote power units if any, and connection to building's power supply.
 - 1. Do not install damaged components. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 2. Install operators true in alignment with established lines and door geometry without warp or rack. Anchor securely in place.
- B. Controls: Install activation and safety devices according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for operator type and direction of pedestrian travel. Connect control wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Signage: Apply on both sides of each door as required by cited BHMA standard for type of door operator and direction of pedestrian travel.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certified Inspector: Owner will engage a Certified Inspector to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.

- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Test and inspect each automatic door operator installation, using AAADM inspection forms, to determine compliance of installed systems with applicable BHMA standards.
- C. Automatic door operators will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust automatic door operators to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer; comply with requirements of applicable BHMA standards.
 - 1. Adjust operators on exterior doors for weathertight closure.
- B. After completing installation of automatic door operators, inspect exposed finishes on doors and operators. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- C. Readjust automatic door operators and controls after repeated operation of completed installation equivalent to three days' use by normal traffic (100 to 300 cycles).

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain automatic door operators.

END OF SECTION 087113

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, and storefront framing.
 - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants and colored spacers, in 12-inch lengths.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-E coatings.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For tinted glass, coated glass, insulating glass, and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Install glazing in mockups specified in Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" to match glazing systems required for Project, including glazing methods.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
 1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
 - 1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain reflective-coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.
 - 1. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Wind Design Data: As indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Basic Wind Speed: 100 mph.
 - c. Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - d. Exposure Category: D.
 - 2. Design Snow Loads: Per structural.
 - 3. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
 - 4. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall comply with basic-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 3 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on Project.
 - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.
 - 2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located more than 30 feet above grade.

- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
 - 2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
 - 3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - 4. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
 - 5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IgCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
 - 2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- E. Strength: Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
 - 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
 - 2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
 - 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.6 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
 - 1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 - 2. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.8 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
 - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.6 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type T: Clear fully tempered float glass.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
 - 2. Safety glazing required.

3.7 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type IN: Low-E-coated, tinted insulating glass.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: PPG Solar Ban Co./Solar Gray.
 - 2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
 - 4. Outdoor Lite: Tinted heat-strengthened or fully tempered float glass as required by IBC.
 - 5. Tint Color: Gray.
 - 6. Interspace Content: Air.
 - 7. Indoor Lite: Clear annealed, heat-strengthened, or fully tempered float glass as required by IBC.
 - 8. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on third surface.
 - 9. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum.
 - 10. Summer Daytime U-Factor: 0.27 maximum.
 - 11. Visible Light Transmittance: 35 percent minimum.
 - 12. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: .25 maximum.
 - 13. Safety glazing required.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
- 2. Grid suspension systems for gypsum board ceilings.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs; floor joists; roof rafters and ceiling joists; and roof trusses.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Studs and Runners: Provide documentation that framing members' certification is according to SIFA's "Code Compliance Certification Program for Cold-Formed Steel Structural and Non-Structural Framing Members."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Horizontal Deflection: For wall assemblies, limited to 1/240 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 10 lbf/sq. ft..

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645. Use either steel studs and runners or embossed steel studs and runners.
 - 1. Steel Studs and Runners:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
 - 2) MBA Building Supplies.
 - 3) MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
 - 4) Phillips Manufacturing Co.
 - 5) Steel Network, Inc. (The).
 - 6) Telling Industries.
 - b. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by performance requirements for horizontal deflection.
 - c. Depth: As indicated on Drawings and as required by performance requirements for horizontal deflection.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Clip System: Clips designed for use in head-of-wall deflection conditions that provide a positive attachment of studs to runners while allowing 1-1/2-inch minimum vertical movement.
 - 2. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
 - 3. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
 - 4. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:

1. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES [AC01] [AC193] [AC58] [or] [AC308] as appropriate for the substrate.
 - a. Uses: Securing hangers to structure.
 - b. Type: [Torque-controlled, expansion anchor] [torque-controlled, adhesive anchor] [or] [adhesive anchor].
 - c. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.

D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, [in size indicated on Drawings] [1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated] <Insert size>.

E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):

1. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 - a. Configuration: [Asymmetrical] [or] [hat shaped].

F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.

1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
 - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
 - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
 - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Single-Layer Application: As required by horizontal deflection performance requirements.
 - 2. Multilayer Application: As required by horizontal deflection performance requirements.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
 - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
 - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
 - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.5 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
 - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
 - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 24 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
 - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 - 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.
- F. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

- G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.

- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

- 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. Continental Building Products, LLC.
 - d. Georgia-Pacific Building Products.
 - e. National Gypsum Company.
 - f. PABCO Gypsum.
 - g. Temple-Inland Building Products by Georgia-Pacific.
 - h. United States Gypsum Company.
 - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 3. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.

2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.

- d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
- e. Expansion (control) joint.

2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- D. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
- F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072501 "Self Adhering Vapor Barriers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- C. Locate edge and end joints over supports. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- D. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- E. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- F. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- G. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- H. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with

manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:

1. Type X: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Single-Layer Application:

1. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

- C. Multilayer Application:

1. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.

3.4 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 3. L-Bead: Use where indicated.

3.5 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ceramic mosaic tile.
 - 2. Porcelain tile.
 - 3. Tile backing panels.
 - 4. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 5. Metal edge strips.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. For ceramic mosaic tile in color blend patterns, provide full sheets of each color blend.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products and certified porcelain tile.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
 - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer is a five-star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
 - 2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
 - 3. Installer employs Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced

by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

- C. **Factory Blending:** For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. **Mounting:** For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. **Ceramic Tile Type 'WT1':** Factory-mounted tile porcelain tile.
 - 1. **Composition:** Porcelain.
 - 2. **Certification:** Porcelain tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
 - 3. **Module Size:** See Plans.
 - 4. **Face:** Pattern of design indicated.
 - 5. **Tile Color and Pattern:** See Plans, Sheet A501.
- B. **Ceramic Tile Type 'FT1,' 'FT2':** Floor tile.
 - 1. **Composition:** Porcelain.
 - 2. **Face Size Variation:** Calibrated or rectified.
 - 3. **Thickness:** 3/8 inch.
 - 4. **Face:** Plain with square edges.
 - 5. **Tile Color and Pattern:** See Plans, Sheet A501.
 - 6. **Trim Units:** Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. **External Corners for Thinset Mortar Installations:** Schluter, module size same as adjoining flat tile.
- C. **Ceramic Tile Type 'WT2':** Glass Mosaics.
 - 1. **Certification:** Tile certified by the Glass Tile Certification Agency.
 - 2. **Face Size:** See Plans.
 - 3. **Face:** As indicated.
 - 4. **Dynamic Coefficient of Friction:** Not less than 0.42.
 - 5. **Tile Color and Pattern:** See Plans, Sheet A501.
 - 6. **Trim Units:** Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. **Wainscot Cap:** Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile.
 - b. **Internal Corners:** Field-butted square corners.

- c. Tapered Transition Tile: Shape designed to effect transition between thickness of tile floor and adjoining floor finishes of different thickness, tapered to provide reduction in thickness from 1/2 to 1/4 inch across nominal 4-inch dimension.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C 1325, Type A, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- B. Fiber-Cement Backer Board: ASTM C 1288, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.

2.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Polyethylene Sheet: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; 0.008-inch nominal thickness.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Schluter Systems L.P.

2.6 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
 1. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
 3. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

2.7 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.

- C. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
 - 1. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
 - 2. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
- D. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less to be used for all floor tile.
 - 1. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.
- E. Grout for Pregrouted Tile Sheets: Same product used in factory to pregrout tile sheets.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; nickel silver exposed-edge material.
- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- E. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.

2.9 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA

installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.

1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Tile floors in laundries.
 - b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
 - c. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
 1. Glass Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch.
 2. Porcelain Tile: 1/4 inch.
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.

- J. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated.
- K. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use latex-portland cement mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:

1. Ceramic Tile Installation 'FT1' and 'FT2': TCNA F125A; thinset mortar on crack isolation/waterproof membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: 'FT1.'
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.

B. Interior Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:

1. Ceramic Tile Installation 'WT1,' 'WT2': TCNA W244C or TCNA W244F; thinset mortar on cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board over vapor-retarder membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: 'WT1,' 'WT2.'
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Acoustical Panel: Set of 6-inch- square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
 - 2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch- long Samples of each type, finish, and color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to NVLAP for testing indicated.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Acoustical ceiling shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.

2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

A. Source Limitations:

1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Glass-Fiber-Based Panels: Made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.

D. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.

E. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

A. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:

1. Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
2. Pattern: D (fissured).

B. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

C. LR: Not less than 0.80.

D. NRC: Not less than 0.70.

E. CAC: Not less than 35.

F. Edge/Joint Detail: Square.

G. Thickness: 3/4 inch.

- H. Modular Size: 24 by 48 inches.
- I. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 - 2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- diameter wire.
- C. Seismic Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- D. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- E. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed and spaced to secure acoustical panels in place.
- F. Hold-Down Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches o.c. on all cross tees.
- G. Impact Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard impact-clip system designed to absorb impact forces against acoustical panels.

2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch- wide metal caps on flanges.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
 - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
 - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
 - 4. Cap Material: Steel or aluminum cold-rolled sheet.

5. Cap Finish: Painted in color as selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
 1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation.
 - b. United States Gypsum Company.
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. OSI Sealants; Henkel Corporation.
 - b. Pecora Corporation.
 - c. Tremco, Inc.
- C. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 1. Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant.
 2. Concealed Joints: Nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

6. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 7. Do not attach hangers to roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 8. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
 9. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms and roof deck.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
 - a. Install panels with pattern running in one direction parallel to short axis of space.
 2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
 3. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
 4. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Compliance of seismic design.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations show compliance with requirements.
 1. Extent of Each Test Area: When installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion but no panels have been installed.
 - a. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf of tension.
 - b. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.
- D. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Resilient base.
 - 2. Resilient molding accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE 'RB1'

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Roppe Corporation, USA.
 - 2. Johnsonite.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 - 1. Style and Location:
 - a. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas noted for rubber base.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- D. Height: 4 inches.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: See Plans.

2.2 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY – See plans, Sheet A501

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Roppe Corporation, USA.
 - 2. Johnsonite.
- B. Description: Rubber transition strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.
- E. Colors and Patterns: See Plans, Sheet A501.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.

1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 10 pH.
 4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.

H. Job-Formed Corners:

1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096516 - RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes rubber sheet flooring.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of flooring. Include flooring layouts, locations of seams, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
 - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples for Verification: In manufacturer's standard size, but not less than 6-by-9-inch sections of each different color and pattern of resilient sheet flooring required.
 - 1. For heat-welding bead, manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.
- D. Welded-Seam Samples: For seamless-installation technique indicated and for each resilient sheet flooring product, color, and pattern required; with seam running lengthwise and in center of 6-by-9-inch Sample applied to a rigid backing and prepared by Installer for this Project.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient sheet flooring. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of resilient sheet flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Resilient Sheet Flooring: Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, in roll form and in full roll width for each type, color, and pattern of flooring installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for resilient sheet flooring installation and seaming method indicated.
 - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer for installation techniques required.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient sheet flooring and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store rolls upright.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 85 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient sheet flooring during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resilient sheet flooring installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after resilient sheet flooring installation.
- E. Install resilient sheet flooring after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient sheet flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 UNBACKED RUBBER SHEET FLOORING 'RF1'

- A. Product Standard: ASTM F 1859.
 - 1. Thickness: As standard with manufacturer.
 - 2. Hardness: Manufacturer's standard hardness, measured using Shore, Type A durometer per ASTM D 2240.
- B. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
- C. Sheet Width: As standard with manufacturer.
- D. Seamless-Installation Method: Heat welded.
- E. Colors and Patterns: See Plans.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers to suit resilient sheet flooring and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Seamless-Installation Accessories:
 - 1. Heat-Welding Bead: Manufacturer's solid-strand product for heat welding seams.
 - a. Color: See Plans.
 - 2. Chemical-Bonding Compound: Manufacturer's product for chemically bonding seams.
- D. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to resilient sheet flooring manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to resilient sheet flooring manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient sheet flooring until it is the same temperature as the space where it is to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move flooring and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient sheet flooring.

3.3 RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Unroll resilient sheet flooring and allow it to stabilize before cutting and fitting.
- C. Lay out resilient sheet flooring as follows:
 - 1. Maintain uniformity of flooring direction.
 - 2. Minimize number of seams; place seams in inconspicuous and low-traffic areas, at least 6 inches away from parallel joints in flooring substrates.
 - 3. Match edges of flooring for color shading at seams.
 - 4. Avoid cross seams.
- D. Scribe and cut resilient sheet flooring to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend resilient sheet flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on resilient sheet flooring as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install resilient sheet flooring on covers for telephone and electrical ducts and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of flooring installed on covers and adjoining flooring. Tightly adhere flooring edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere resilient sheet flooring to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Seamless Installation:
 - 1. Heat-Welded Seams: Comply with ASTM F 1516. Rout joints and heat weld with welding bead to permanently fuse sections into a seamless flooring. Prepare, weld, and finish seams to produce surfaces flush with adjoining flooring surfaces.
 - 2. Chemically Bonded Seams: Bond seams with chemical-bonding compound to permanently fuse sections into a seamless flooring. Prepare seams and apply compound to produce tightly fitted seams without gaps, overlays, or excess bonding compound on flooring surfaces.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient sheet flooring installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient sheet flooring from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient sheet flooring until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096516

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Luxury Vinyl Tile.
 - 2. Rubber.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
 - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.
 - 1. For heat-welding bead, manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.
- D. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.
 - 1. For heat-welding bead, manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.
- E. Product Schedule: For floor tile. 'LV1,' 'LV2,' 'LV3,' 'LV4.'

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
 - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient tile flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 LUXURY VINYL TILE 'LV1,' 'LV2,' 'LV3,' 'LV4.'

- A. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
 - 1. Class: Class III, printed film vinyl tile.
 - 2. Type: B, embossed surface.
- B. Thickness: 0.080 inch.
- C. Size: 24" by 24" squares.
- D. Colors and Patterns: See Plans, Sheet A501.

2.3 RUBBER FLOOR TILE 'RF2'

- A. Thickness, Color, and Size: See Plans, Sheet A501.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.

1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to floor tile manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.

C. Access Flooring Panels: Remove protective film of oil or other coating using method recommended by access flooring manufacturer.

D. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

E. Do not install floor tiles until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.

1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

F. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
 - 1. Lay tiles in random wood floor pattern for 'LVT.'
 - 2. 'RF2' tiles to be installed square to the room.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
 - 1. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
 - 1. Apply two coats of sealer only if recommended by Manufacturer.
- E. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096519

SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Fiber-cement board.
 - 3. Steel and iron.
 - 4. Galvanized metal.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of metal substrates.
 - 2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
 - 3. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for shop priming pipe and tube railings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Behr Process Corporation.
2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
3. California Paints.
4. Conco Paints.
5. Coronado Paint; Benjamin Moore Company.
6. Diamond Vogel Paints.
7. Dulux (formerly ICI Paints); a brand of AkzoNobel.
8. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
9. Duron, Inc.
10. Frazee Paint; Comex Group.
11. Glidden Professional.
12. Kelly-Moore Paint Company Inc.
13. Kwal Paint; Comex Group.
14. M.A.B. Paints.
15. McCormick Paints.
16. Parker Paint; Comex Group.
17. PPG Architectural Coatings.
18. Pratt & Lambert.
19. Rodda Paint Co.
20. Rust-Oleum Corporation; a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
21. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
22. Valspar Corporation - Architectural (Pro).
23. Vista Paint Corporation.
24. Zinsser; Rust-Oleum Corporation.

- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 2. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
 3. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 4. Wood: 15 percent.
 5. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
 6. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.

- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:

- a. Equipment, including panelboards.
- b. Uninsulated metal piping.
- c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
- d. Pipe hangers and supports.
- e. Metal conduit.
- f. Plastic conduit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:
 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 3.1C:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.
- B. Cement Board Substrates:

1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.3A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

- C. Steel and Iron Substrates:
 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.1Q:
 - a. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd enamel, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.

- D. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
 1. Alkyd System MPI EXT 5.3B:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, cementitious, MPI #26.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, alkyd enamel, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.

END OF SECTION 099113

SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
 - 1. Galvanized metal.
 - 2. Gypsum board.
 - 3. MDF/Wood.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.

2. Indicate VOC content.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 1. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

C. Colors: See Plans, Sheet A501.

1. Ten percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 2. Wood: 15 percent.
 3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- E. Spray-Textured Ceiling Substrates: Verify that surfaces are dry.

- F. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- G. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
 - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
 - 4. SSPC-SP 11.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

- 1. Latex System MPI INT 5.3A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
 - 1) Sherwin Williams Multi-Purpose Primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 5).
 - 1) Sherwin Williams – Promar 200.

B. Wood Substrates: Wood trim and MDF.

- 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI INT 6.3T:
 - a. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 5).
 - 1) Sherwin Williams – Promar 200.

C. Gypsum Board Substrates:

- 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - 1) Sherwin Williams – Promar 200 Primer.
 - b. Prime Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #52.
 - 1) Sherwin Williams – Promar 200.

D. Steel-Metal Substrates

- 1. Prime Coat: Primer – Sherwin Williams, Multi-Purpose Primer.
- 2. Intermediate Coat: Promar 200.
- 3. Top Coat: Latex, Interior.

a. Sherwin Williams – Promar 200.

E. CMU Substrates:

1. Latex System MPI INT 4.2A:

a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.

1) Sherwin Williams – Prepright Block Filler.

b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.

c. Top Coat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.

1) Sherwin Williams – Promar 200.

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 102113.13 - METAL TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes painted steel toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
 - 2. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
 - 3. Show locations of reinforcements for compartment-mounted grab bars and locations of blocking for surface-mounted toilet accessories.
 - 4. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
 - 5. Show locations of floor drains.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
- D. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

2.2 PAINTED STEEL TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Accurate Partitions Corp.; ASI Group.
 - 2. All American Metal Corp.
 - 3. American Sanitary Partition Corporation.
 - 4. Ampco Products, LLC.
 - 5. Bradley Corporation.
 - 6. Flush Metal Partition, LLC.
 - 7. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
 - 8. Global Partitions; ASI Group.
 - 9. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.
 - 10. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
 - 11. Marlite.
 - 12. Metpar Corp.
 - 13. Shanahan's Manufacturing Limited.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor anchored.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung, flat panel.

- D. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Seamless, metal facing sheets pressure laminated to core material; with continuous, interlocking molding strip or lapped-and-formed edge closures; corners secured by welding or clips and exposed welds ground smooth. Provide with no-sightline system. Exposed surfaces shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, telegraphing of core material, or other imperfections.
1. Core Material: Manufacturer's standard sound-deadening honeycomb of resin-impregnated kraft paper in thickness required to provide finished thickness of 1 inch for doors and panels and 1-1/4 inches for pilasters.
 2. Grab-Bar Reinforcement: Provide concealed internal reinforcement for grab bars mounted on units of size and material adequate for panel to withstand applied downward load on grab bar of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to ASTM F 446, without deformation of panel.
 3. Tapping Reinforcement: Provide concealed reinforcement for tapping (threading) at locations where machine screws are used for attaching items to units.
- E. Urinal-Screen Construction:
1. Flat-Panel Urinal Screen: Matching panel construction.
- F. Facing Sheets and Closures: Electrolytically coated steel or hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet with nominal base-metal (uncoated) thicknesses as follows:
1. Pilasters, Braced at Both Ends: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.036 inch.
 2. Pilasters, Unbraced at One End: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.048 inch.
 3. Panels: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.030 inch.
 4. Doors: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.030 inch.
 5. Flat-Panel Urinal Screens: Thickness matching the panels.
- G. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch nominal thickness and 3 inches high, finished to match hardware.
- H. Brackets (Fittings):
1. Stirrup Type: Ear or U-brackets; chrome-plated zamac or clear-anodized aluminum.
- I. Steel Sheet Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard baked-on finish, including thermosetting, electrostatically applied, and powder coatings. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - a. Allow for application of one color in each room.

2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard operating hardware and accessories.

1. Material: Chrome-plated zamac.
 2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
 3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
 4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
 5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors and entrance-screen doors.
 6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- C. Brass Castings: ASTM B 584.
- D. Brass Extrusions: ASTM B 455.
- E. Steel Sheet: Commercial steel sheet for exposed applications; mill phosphatized and selected for smoothness.
1. Electrolytically Zinc Coated: ASTM A 879/A 879M, 01Z.
 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized: ASTM A 653/A 653M, either hot-dip galvanized or galvanized.
- F. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- G. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.
- H. Zamac: ASTM B 86, commercial zinc-alloy die castings, chrome plated.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories, and solid blocking within panel where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Coordinate layout and installation of supports, inserts, and anchors built into other units of work for toilet compartment anchorage.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position indicated with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
 - 1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
 - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
 - 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
 - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.

b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.

- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 2 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Level, plumb, and tighten pilasters. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are level with tops of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113.13

SECTION 102116.17 - PHENOLIC-CORE SHOWER AND DRESSING COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid, phenolic-core compartments.
 - 2. Shower receptors.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For shower and dressing compartments.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted accessories.
 - 3. Show locations of centerlines of drains.
 - 4. Show ceiling grid, ceiling-mounted items, and overhead support or bracing locations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of shower and dressing compartment.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For shower and dressing compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of fixtures, drains, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with shower and dressing compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for shower and dressing compartments designated as accessible.

2.2 PHENOLIC-CORE COMPARTMENTS SH-1

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Accurate Partitions Corp.; ASI Group.
 - 2. All American Metal Corp.
 - 3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 4. Columbia Lockers; Partition Systems International of South Carolina.
 - 5. Flush Metal Partition, LLC.
 - 6. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
 - 7. Global Partitions; ASI Group.
 - 8. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
 - 9. Marlite.
 - 10. Metpar Corp.
 - 11. Tex-Lam Manufacturing, Inc.
- B. Configuration: Shower compartment as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Enclosure Style: Floor and ceiling anchored.
- D. Panel and Pilaster Construction: Solid phenolic-core panel material with melamine facing on both sides fused together during panel manufacture (not separately laminated) and with eased and polished edges. Provide minimum 3/4-inch- thick pilasters and minimum 1/2-inch- thick panels.
- E. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Formed from stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch nominal thickness and 3 inches high, finished to match hardware.

F. Brackets (Fittings):

1. Stirrup Type: Ear or U-brackets; stainless steel.

G. Phenolic-Panel Finish:

1. Facing Sheet Finish: One color and pattern in each room.
2. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, with manufacturer's standard through-color core matching face sheet.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.

B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.

C. Brass Castings: ASTM B 584.

D. Brass Extrusions: ASTM B 455.

E. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.

F. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Door Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard design, heavy-duty, operating hardware and accessories. Mount to panels with through-bolts.

1. Material: Stainless steel.
2. Clothing Hooks: Manufacturer's standard clothing hooks in each compartment.

B. Headrail with Hooks: Manufacturer's standard, continuous, extruded-aluminum headrail or cap with curtain hooks running in concealed track; with antigrip profile; in manufacturer's standard finish.

C. Curtain: Flame-resistant, polyester-reinforced vinyl fabric that is stain resistant, self-sanitizing, antistatic, antimicrobial, and launderable to a temperature of not less than 90 deg F.

1. Flame Resistance: Passes NFPA 701 tests when tested by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Labeling: Identify fabrics with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
3. Curtain Grommets: Two-piece, rolled-edge, rustproof, nickel-plated brass; spaced not more than 6 inches o.c.; machined into top hem.
4. Width: Minimum 6 inches wider than opening.
5. Length: Where curtain extends to a floor surface, size so that bottom hem clears finished floor by not more than 1 inch and not less than 1/2 inch above floor surface. Where

curtains extend to a shower-receptor curb, size so that bottom hem hangs above curb line and clears curb line by not more than 1/2 inch.

6. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Soap Holder: Surface-mounted, seamless stainless-steel soap dish.

E. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, exposed fasteners of stainless steel, chrome-plated steel, or solid brass, finished to match the items they are securing; with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. Use countersunk, flush-type bolt heads or otherwise make fasteners inconspicuous if exposed on opposite side of panel from hardware or accessory item. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Compartments: Manufacturer's standard, corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at pilasters and walls, with leveling adjustment at tops and bottoms of pilasters. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at pilasters to conceal anchorage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install compartments rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure compartments in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.

B. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Compartments: Secure pilasters to supporting construction, and level, plumb, and tighten.

C. Curtains: Install curtains to specified length, and verify that they hang vertically without stress points or diagonal folds.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Curtain Adjustment: After hanging curtains, test and adjust each track or rod to produce unencumbered, smooth operation. Steam and dress down curtains as required to produce crease- and wrinkle-free installation. Remove and replace curtains that are stained or soiled or that have stress points or diagonal folds.

B. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on inswinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on outswinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102116.17

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Public-use washroom accessories.
2. Public-use shower room accessories.
3. Childcare accessories.
4. Underlavatory guards.
5. Custodial accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for ceramic toilet and bath accessories.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
3. Include electrical characteristics.

- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser TA-1:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
 2. Description: Roll-in-reserve dispenser with hinged front secured with tumbler lockset.
 3. Mounting: Partition mounted.
 4. Operation: Eccentric-shaped, molded-plastic spindle revolves one-half revolution per dispensing operation for controlled delivery; core cannot be removed until roll is empty.
 5. Capacity: Designed for 5-inch- diameter tissue rolls.
 6. Material and Finish: Satin-finish aluminum bracket with plastic spindle.

C. Combination Toilet Tissue Dispenser TA-2:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Seachrome Corporation.
 - h. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Description: Combination unit with double-roll toilet tissue dispenser and the following:
 - a. Removable sanitary-napkin waste receptacle with self-closing, disposal-opening cover.
3. Mounting: Partition mounted.
4. Toilet Tissue Dispenser Capacity: 4-1/2- or 5-inch- diameter tissue rolls.
5. Operation: Eccentric-shaped, molded-plastic spindle revolves one-half revolution per dispensing operation for controlled delivery; core cannot be removed until roll is empty.
6. Material and Finish: Satin-finish aluminum bracket with plastic spindle.

D. Paper Towel (Folded) Dispenser TA-3:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Seachrome Corporation.
 - h. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
3. Minimum Capacity: 600 C-fold or 800 multifold towels.
4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
5. Lockset: Tumbler type.
6. Refill Indicator: Pierced slots at sides or front.

E. Liquid-Soap Dispenser TA-4:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Seachrome Corporation.
 - h. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Description: Designed for dispensing antibacterial soap in liquid or lotion form.
 3. Mounting: Horizontally oriented, surface mounted.
 4. Capacity: 12 oz.
 5. Materials: Stainless steel.
 6. Lockset: Tumbler type.
 7. Refill Indicator: Window type.

F. Grab Bar TA-5:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin).
4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches.
5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.

G. Mirror Unit TA-6:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Frame: Stainless-steel angle, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Integral Shelf: 5 inches deep.
4. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
 - a. One-piece, galvanized-steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
5. Size: As indicated on Drawings.

H. Coat Hook TA-7:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Description: Double-prong unit.
3. Material and Finish: Polished chrome-plated zinc alloy (zamac).

2.2 PUBLIC-USE SHOWER ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use shower room accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Shower Curtain Rod TA-8:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Description: 1-inch OD; fabricated from nominal 0.0375-inch- thick stainless steel.
3. Mounting Flanges: Stainless-steel flanges designed for exposed fasteners.

4. Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

C. Shower Curtain TA-9:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Size: Minimum 6 inches wider than opening by 72 inches high.
3. Material: Nylon-reinforced vinyl, minimum 10 oz. or 0.008-inch- thick vinyl, with integral antibacterial agent.
4. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
5. Grommets: Corrosion resistant at minimum 6 inches o.c. through top hem.
6. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless-steel, spring wire curtain hooks with snap fasteners, sized to accommodate specified curtain rod. Provide one hook per curtain grommet.

D. Folding Shower Seat TA-10:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Configuration: L-shaped seat, designed for wheelchair access.
3. Seat: Phenolic or polymeric composite of slat-type or one-piece construction in color as selected by Architect.
4. Mounting Mechanism: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

E. Robe Hook TA-11:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.

- d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
2. Description: Double-prong unit.
 3. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 7 finish (polished).

2.3 CHILDCARE ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain childcare accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Diaper-Changing Station TA-12:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Diaper Deck & Company, Inc.
 - c. Foundations Children's Products.
 - d. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - e. Koala Kare Products.
 - f. SafeStrap Company, Inc. (SSC, Inc.).
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
 2. Description: Horizontal unit that opens by folding down from stored position and with child-protection strap.
 - a. Engineered to support minimum of 250-lb static load when opened.
 3. Mounting: Surface mounted, with unit projecting not more than 4 inches from wall when closed.
 4. Operation: By pneumatic shock-absorbing mechanism.
 5. Material and Finish: HDPE in manufacturer's standard color.
 6. Liner Dispenser: Built in.

2.4 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Underlavatory Guard TA-13:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
 - b. Truebro by IPS Corporation.

2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.5 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain custodial accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Mop and Broom Holder TA-14:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
 - e. Brey-Krause Manufacturing Co.
 - f. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick.
 - g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
 2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
 3. Length: 36 inches.
 4. Hooks: Four.
 5. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
 - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel.
 - b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch- diameter stainless steel.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.

- 1. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.

- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container F.E.: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.

- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

- 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

- a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.

- 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Mounting Brackets: 48 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

SECTION 105113 - METAL LOCKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Knocked-down athletic lockers.
 - 2. Locker benches.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of metal locker.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of metal locker and bench.
- B. Shop Drawings: For metal lockers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show locker trim and accessories.
 - 3. Include locker identification system and numbering sequence.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available.
- D. Product Schedule: For lockers. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For adjusting, repairing, and replacing locker doors and latching mechanisms to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver metal lockers until spaces to receive them are clean, dry, and ready for their installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of recessed openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of work specified in other Sections to ensure that metal lockers can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures.
 - b. Faulty operation of latches and other door hardware.
 - 2. Damage from deliberate destruction and vandalism is excluded.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Knocked-Down Metal Lockers: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain metal lockers and accessories from single source from single locker manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Requirements: For lockers indicated to be accessible, comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC A117.1.

2.3 KNOCKED-DOWN ATHLETIC LOCKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AJW Architectural Products.
 2. Art Metal Products.
 3. ASI Storage Solutions; ASI Group.
 4. General Storage Systems Ltd.
 5. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.
 6. List Industries Inc.
 7. Lyon Workspace Products, LLC.
 8. Olympus Lockers & Storage Products, Inc.
 9. Penco Products, Inc.
 10. Republic Storage Systems, LLC.
 11. Shanahan's Manufacturing Limited.
 12. WEC Manufacturing LLC.
- B. Doors: One piece; fabricated from 0.075-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; formed into channel shape with double bend at vertical edges and with right-angle single bend at horizontal edges.
1. Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard reinforcing angles, channels, or stiffeners for doors more than 15 inches wide; welded to inner face of doors.
 2. Door Style: Vented panel as follows:
 - a. Louvered Vents: No fewer than six louver openings at top and bottom for single-tier, three louver openings at top and bottom for double-tier, two louver openings at top and bottom, or three louver openings at top or bottom, for triple-tier lockers.
- C. Body: Assembled by riveting or bolting body components together. Fabricate from unperforated steel sheet with thicknesses as follows:
1. Tops and Bottoms: 0.060-inch nominal thickness, with single bend at edges.
 2. Backs: 0.048-inch nominal thickness.
 3. Shelves: 0.060-inch nominal thickness, with double bend at front and single bend at sides and back.
- D. Unperforated Sides: Fabricated from 0.060-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- E. Frames: Channel formed; fabricated from 0.060-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet or 0.097-inch nominal-thickness steel angles; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom

main frames factory welded into vertical main frames. Form continuous, integral, full-height door strikes on vertical main frames.

1. Cross Frames for Double-Tier and Triple-Tier Lockers: Channel formed and fabricated from same material as main frames; welded to vertical main frames.
- F. Reinforced Bottoms: Structural channels, formed from 0.060-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to front and rear of side-panel frames.
- G. Hinges: Welded to door and attached to door frame with no fewer than two factory-installed rivets per hinge that are completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.
1. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard, steel, continuous or knuckle type.
- H. Door Handle and Latch for Box Lockers: Stainless-steel strike plate with integral pull; with steel padlock loop that projects through metal locker door.
- I. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch high.
- J. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed type, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.
- K. Continuous Zee Base: 4 inches high; fabricated from 0.075-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- L. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated from 0.048-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet, with a pitch of approximately 20 degrees.
1. Closures: Vertical-end type.
- M. Recess Trim: Fabricated from 0.048-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- N. Filler Panels: Fabricated from 0.048-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- O. Boxed End Panels: Fabricated from 0.060-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- P. Materials:
1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with A60 zinc-iron, alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.
- Q. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
1. Color: Two colors, with door one color and frame and body another color; as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 LOCKER BENCHES

- A. Provide bench units with overall assembly height of 17-1/2 inches.
- B. Bench Tops: Manufacturer's standard one-piece units, with rounded corners and edges.
 - 1. Size: Minimum 9-1/2 inches wide by 1-1/4 inches thick except provide minimum 20-inch-wide tops where accessible benches are indicated.
 - 2. Laminated clear hardwood with one coat of clear sealer on all surfaces and one coat of clear lacquer on top and sides.
- C. Fixed Pedestals: Manufacturer's standard supports, with predrilled fastener holes for attaching bench top and anchoring to floor, complete with fasteners and anchors, and as follows:
 - 1. Tubular Steel: 1-1/2-inch-diameter steel tubing threaded on both ends, with standard pipe flange at top and bell-shaped cast-iron base; with baked-enamel or powder-coat finish; anchored with exposed fasteners.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Materials:
 - 1. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500 M, cold rolled.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate metal lockers square, rigid, without warp, and with metal faces flat and free of dents or distortion. Make exposed metal edges safe to touch and free of sharp edges and burrs.
 - 1. Form body panels, doors, shelves, and accessories from one-piece steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide fasteners, filler plates, supports, clips, and closures as required for complete installation.
- B. Fabricate each metal locker with an individual door and frame; individual top, bottom, and back; and common intermediate uprights separating compartments. Factory weld frame members of each metal locker together to form a rigid, one-piece assembly.
- C. Equipment: Provide each locker with an identification plate and the following equipment:
 - 1. Double-Tier Units: One double-prong ceiling hook and two single-prong wall hooks.
 - 2. Triple-Tier Units: One double-prong ceiling hook.
- D. Knocked-Down Construction: Fabricate metal lockers using nuts, bolts, screws, or rivets for nominal assembly at Project site or preassembly at plant prior to shipping.
- E. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:
 - 1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than 15 inches above the floor.

2. Where hooks, coat rods, or additional shelves are provided, locate no higher than 48 inches above the floor.
- F. Continuous Base: Formed into channel or zee profile for stiffness, and fabricated in lengths as long as practical to enclose base and base ends of metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
- G. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated in lengths as long as practical, without visible fasteners at splice locations; finished to match lockers.
 1. Sloping-top corner fillers, mitered.
- H. Recess Trim: Fabricated with minimum 2-1/2-inch face width and in lengths as long as practical; finished to match lockers.
- I. Filler Panels: Fabricated in an unequal leg angle shape; finished to match lockers. Provide slip-joint filler angle formed to receive filler panel.
- J. Boxed End Panels: Fabricated with 1-inch- wide edge dimension, and designed for concealing fasteners and holes at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
 1. Provide one-piece panels for double-row (back-to-back) locker ends.
- K. Finished End Panels: Designed for concealing unused penetrations and fasteners, except for perimeter fasteners, at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
 1. Provide one-piece panels for double-row (back-to-back) locker ends.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Zinc- or nickel-plated steel, slotless-type, exposed bolt heads; with self-locking nuts or lock washers for nuts on moving parts.
- B. Anchors: Material, type, and size required for secure anchorage to each substrate.
 1. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls, and elsewhere as indicated, for corrosion resistance.
 2. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls, floors, and support bases, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install lockers level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
 - 1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 36 inches o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
 - 2. Anchor single rows of metal lockers to walls near top and bottom of lockers.
 - 3. Anchor back-to-back metal lockers to floor.
- B. Knocked-Down Lockers: Assemble with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on door faces or face frames.
- C. Equipment:
 - 1. Attach hooks with at least two fasteners.
 - 2. Attach door locks on doors using security-type fasteners.
 - 3. Identification Plates: Identify metal lockers with identification indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Attach plates to each locker door, near top, centered, with at least two aluminum rivets.
- D. Trim: Fit exposed connections of trim, fillers, and closures accurately together to form tight, hairline joints, with concealed fasteners and splice plates.
 - 1. Attach recess trim to recessed metal lockers with concealed clips.
 - 2. Attach filler panels with concealed fasteners. Locate filler panels where indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Attach sloping-top units to metal lockers, with closures at exposed ends.
 - 4. Attach boxed end panels using concealed fasteners to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers.
 - 5. Attach finished end panels using fasteners only at perimeter to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers.
- E. Fixed Locker Benches: Provide no fewer than two pedestals for each bench, uniformly spaced not more than 72 inches apart. Securely fasten tops of pedestals to undersides of bench tops, and anchor bases to floor.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Adjust doors and latches to operate easily without binding.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect metal lockers from damage, abuse, dust, dirt, stain, or paint. Do not permit use during construction.
- B. Touch up marred finishes, or replace metal lockers that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by locker manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 105113

SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Manually operated roller shades with single rollers for exterior windows.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.
 - 2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing the perimeters of installation accessories for light-blocking shades with a sealant.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 10 inches long.

- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.

- 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of roller shade.

- 1. Shadeband Material: Not less than 10 inches square. Mark interior face of material if applicable.
 - 2. Roller Shade: Full-size operating unit, not less than 16 inches wide by 36 inches long for each type of roller shade indicated.
 - 3. Installation Accessories: Full-size unit, not less than 10 inches long.

- F. Product Schedule: For roller shades.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of shadeband material, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Product, Style, and Color: See Plans, 'RS1.'
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES WITH SINGLE ROLLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. BTX Window Automation Inc.
 2. CACO, Inc., Window Fashions.
 3. DFB Sales Inc.
 4. Draper Inc.
 5. Hunter Douglas Contract.
 6. Insolroll Window Shading Systems.
 7. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 8. MechoShade Systems, Inc.
 9. OEM Shades Inc.
 10. Qmotion Shades.
 11. Silent Gliss.
 12. SM Automatic, Inc.
 13. Springs Window Fashions; SWFcontract.
- B. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
1. Bead Chains: Manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
 - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
 - c. Chain-Retainer Type: Chain tensioner, sill mounted.
 2. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: Manufacturer's standard for balancing roller shade weight and for lifting heavy roller shades.
 - a. Provide for shadebands that weigh more than 10 lb or for shades as recommended by manufacturer, whichever criterion is more stringent.
- C. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
1. Roller Drive-End Location: Left side of interior face of shade.
 2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
 3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- D. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
- E. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers into a multiband shade that is operated by one roller drive-end assembly.
- F. Shadebands:

1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
 - a. Type: Enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.

G. Installation Accessories:

1. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and operating mechanism and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
 - a. Shape: Curved.
 - b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches.
2. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.
 1. Source: Roller shade manufacturer.
 2. Type: Woven polyester and PVC-coated polyester.
 3. Weave: Mesh.
 4. Thickness and Weight: See Plans.
 5. Roll Width: To fit windows or between mullions.
 6. Openness Factor: 22 percent.
 7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- B. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch per side or 1/2-inch total, plus or minus 1/8 inch. Length equal to head-to-sill or -floor dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch, plus or minus 1/8 inch.
- C. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible, except as follows:
 1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4, provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure

shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Opaque Shadebands: Located so shadeband is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
- B. Roller Shade Locations: At exterior windows.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces, after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motor-operated roller shades.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 123623.13 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes plastic-laminate countertops.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including panel products, high-pressure decorative laminate, and adhesive for bonding plastic laminate.
 - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
 - 1. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other items installed in plastic-laminate countertops.
 - 2. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For the following:
 - 1. Composite wood and agrifiber products.
 - 2. High-pressure decorative laminate.
 - 3. Chemical-resistant, high-pressure decorative laminate.
 - 4. Adhesives.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance. Shop is compliant with AWI's Quality Certification Program.

- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver countertops until painting and similar operations that could damage countertops have been completed in installation areas. If countertops must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install countertops until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where countertops are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades indicated for construction, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. AWI program indicating that countertops, including installation, comply with requirements of grades specified.
- B. Grade: Premium.
- C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Abet Laminati Inc.

- b. Formica Corporation.
 - c. Lamin-Art, Inc.
 - d. Nevamar; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand.
 - e. Pionite; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand.
 - f. Wilsonart.
- D. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
- 1. As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
 - 2. Match Architect's sample.
 - 3. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
 - a. Solid colors, matte finish.
 - b. Solid colors with core same color as surface, matte finish.
 - c. Wood grains, matte finish.
 - d. Patterns, matte finish.
 - 4. Grain Direction: Parallel to cabinet fronts.
- E. Edge Treatment: Same as laminate cladding on horizontal surfaces.
- F. Core Material: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard.
- G. Core Material at Sinks: medium-density fiberboard made with exterior glue or exterior-grade plywood.
- H. Core Thickness: 3/4 inch.
- 1. Build up countertop thickness to 1-1/2 inches at front, back, and ends with additional layers of core material laminated to top.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
- 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 - 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 - 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: 2-inch OD, black, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement.
 - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch over base cabinets. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- C. Shop cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
 - 1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing countertops, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
 - 1. Provide cutouts for appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items.
 - 2. Seal edges of cutouts by saturating with varnish.

- C. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in the same manner as shop jointing, using dowels, splines, adhesives, and fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Prepare edges to be joined in shop so Project-site processing of top and edge surfaces is not required. Locate field joints where shown on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Secure field joints in plastic-laminate countertops with concealed clamping devices located within 6 inches of front and back edges and at intervals not exceeding 24 inches. Tighten according to manufacturer's written instructions to exert a constant, heavy-clamping pressure at joints.
- D. Install countertops level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- E. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- F. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
 - 1. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
 - 2. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
 - 3. Seal junctures of tops, splashes, and walls with mildew-resistant silicone sealant or another permanently elastic sealing compound recommended by countertop material manufacturer.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean countertops on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 123623.13

SECTION 142400 - HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hydraulic passenger elevators.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for purchase contract for elevators negotiated by Owner and assigned to Contractor.
 - 2. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary use of elevators for construction purposes.
 - 3. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for setting sleeves, inserts, and anchoring devices in masonry and for grouting elevator entrance frames installed in masonry walls.
 - 4. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for the following:
 - a. Hoist beams.
 - b. Pit ladders.
 - 5. Section 221429 "Sump Pumps" for sump pumps, sumps, and sump covers in elevator pits.
 - 6. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for twisted pair conductors used for telephone service for elevators.
 - 7. Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for smoke detectors in elevator lobbies to initiate emergency recall operation and heat detectors in shafts and machine rooms to disconnect power from elevator equipment before sprinkler activation and for connection to elevator controllers.
 - 8. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating well hole to accommodate cylinder assembly and for the disposition of excavated material from the cylinder well hole.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 apply to work of this Section.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include capacities, sizes, performances, operations, safety features, finishes, and similar information. Include product data for car enclosures; hoistway entrances; and operation, control, and signal systems.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and large-scale details indicating service at each landing; machine room layout; coordination with building structure; relationships with other construction; and locations of equipment.
 - 2. Include large-scale layout of car-control station.
 - 3. Indicate maximum dynamic and static loads imposed on building structure at points of support as well as maximum and average power demands.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For finishes involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For exposed car, hoistway door and frame, and signal equipment finishes, 3-inch- square Samples of sheet materials and 4-inch lengths of running trim members.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For elevator equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by elevator manufacturer, certifying that hoistway, pit, and machine room layout and dimensions, as shown on Drawings, and electrical service, as shown and specified, are adequate for elevator system being provided.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For elevators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's/installer's standard operation and maintenance manual, in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 including diagnostic and repair information available to manufacturer's and Installer's maintenance personnel.

- B. Inspection and Acceptance Certificates and Operating Permits: As required by authorities having jurisdiction for normal, unrestricted elevator use.
- C. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: Submit a continuing maintenance proposal from Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard one-year maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Elevator manufacturer or an authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle materials, components and equipment in manufacturer's protective packaging. Store materials, components, and equipment off of ground, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sleeves, block outs, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and other items that are embedded in concrete or masonry for elevator equipment. Furnish templates, sleeves, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and installation instructions and deliver to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate locations and dimensions of other work specified in other Sections that relates to hydraulic elevators, including pit ladders; sumps and floor drains in pits; entrance subsills; electrical service; and electrical outlets, lights, and switches in hoistways, pits, and machine rooms.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair, restore, or replace elevator work that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, operation or control system failure, including excessive malfunctions; performances below specified ratings; excessive wear; unusual deterioration or aging of materials or finishes; unsafe conditions; need for excessive maintenance; abnormal noise or vibration; and similar unusual, unexpected, and unsatisfactory conditions.
 - 2. Warranty Period: One years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRAULIC ELEVATOR MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Crescent Elevator Mfg., Corp.
 2. Fujitec America, Inc.
 3. KONE Inc.
 4. Minnesota Elevator, Inc.
 5. Mowrey Elevator Co.
 6. Otis Elevator Co.
 7. Schindler Elevator Corp.
 8. Schumacher Elevator Co.
 9. ThyssenKrupp Elevator.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain elevators from single manufacturer.
1. Major elevator components, including pump-and-tank units, plunger-cylinder assemblies, controllers, signal fixtures, door operators, car frames, cars, and entrances, shall be manufactured by single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with Section 407 in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC A117.1.
- C. Seismic Performance: Elevator system shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 and shall comply with elevator seismic requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
1. Project Seismic Design Category: D.
 2. Provide earthquake equipment required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
 3. Provide seismic switch required by ASCE/SEI 7.

2.3 ELEVATORS

- A. Elevator System, General: Manufacturer's standard elevator systems. Unless otherwise indicated, manufacturers' standard components shall be used, as included in standard elevator systems and as required for complete system.
- B. Elevator Description: Basis of Design: Vertical Express Twin Post Hole Lever Hydraulic
1. Type: Holeless, beside-the-car, single-acting, dual cylinder.

2. Rated Load: 2500 lb.
3. Freight Loading Class for Service Elevators: Class A.
4. Rated Speed: 130fpm up or 150 fpm down.
5. Operation System: Single automatic operation.
6. Auxiliary Operations:
 - a. Battery-powered lowering.
 - b. Automatic dispatching of loaded car.
 - c. Nuisance call cancel.
 - d. Automatic operation of lights and ventilation fans.
7. Security Features: Car-to-lobby feature.
8. Car Enclosures:
 - a. Inside Width: Not less than 80 inches from side wall to side wall.
 - b. Inside Depth: Not less than 60 inches from back wall to front wall (return panels).
 - c. Inside Height: Not less than 93 inches to underside of ceiling.
 - d. Front Walls (Return Panels): Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish with integral car door frames.
 - e. Car Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - f. Side and Rear Wall Panels: Plastic laminate.
 - g. Reveals: Enameled or powder-coated steel.
 - h. Door Faces (Interior): Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - i. Door Sills: Aluminum.
 - j. Ceiling: Luminous ceiling.
 - k. Handrails: 1-1/2 inches round satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish, at sides and rear of car.
 - l. Floor: Manufacturer's standard carpet.
9. Hoistway Entrances:
 - a. Width: 42 inches.
 - b. Height: 84 inches.
 - c. Type: Single-speed side sliding.
 - d. Frames: Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - e. Doors: Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - f. Sills: Aluminum.
10. Hall Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
11. Additional Requirements:
 - a. Provide inspection certificate in each car, mounted under acrylic cover with frame made from satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - b. Provide hooks for protective pads in car and one complete set of full-height protective pads.

2.4 SYSTEMS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Pump Units: Positive-displacement type with a maximum of 10 percent variation between no load and full load and with minimum pulsations.
 - 1. Pump shall be submersible type with submersible squirrel-cage induction motor, and shall be suspended inside oil tank from vibration isolation mounts or shall be tank-top-mounted type with fan-cooled, squirrel-cage induction motor, and shall be mounted on oil tank with vibration isolation mounts and enclosed in prime-painted steel enclosure lined with 1-inch-thick, glass-fiber insulation board.
 - 2. Motor shall have variable-voltage, variable-frequency control.
- B. Hydraulic Silencers: System shall have hydraulic silencer containing pulsation-absorbing material in blowout-proof housing at pump unit.
- C. Piping: Size, type, and weight of piping as recommended by elevator manufacturer, with flexible connectors to minimize sound and vibration transmissions from power unit.
- D. Hydraulic Fluid: Elevator manufacturer's standard fire-resistant fluid with additives as needed to prevent oxidation of fluid, corrosion of cylinder and other components, and other adverse effects.
- E. Inserts: Furnish required concrete and masonry inserts and similar anchorage devices for installing guide rails, machinery, and other components of elevator work. Device installation is specified in another Section.
- F. Car Frame and Platform: Welded or bolted steel units.
- G. Guides: Roller guides, polymer-coated, nonlubricated sliding guides, or sliding guides with guide-rail lubricators. Provide guides at top and bottom of car frame.

2.5 OPERATION SYSTEMS

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard microprocessor operation system as required to provide type of operation indicated.
- B. Auxiliary Operations:
 - 1. Single-Car Battery-Powered Lowering: When power fails, car is lowered to the lowest floor, opens its doors, and shuts down. System includes rechargeable battery and automatic recharging system.
- C. Security Features: Security features shall not affect emergency firefighters' service.
 - 1. Car-to-Lobby Feature: Feature, activated by keyswitch at main lobby, that causes car to return immediately to lobby and open doors for inspection. On deactivation by keyswitch, calls registered before keyswitch activation are completed and normal operation is resumed.

2.6 DOOR-REOPENING DEVICES

- A. Infrared Array: Provide door-reopening device with uniform array of 36 or more microprocessor-controlled, infrared light beams projecting across car entrance. Interruption of one or more light beams shall cause doors to stop and reopen.

2.7 CAR ENCLOSURES

- A. General: Provide enameled- or powder-coated-steel car enclosures to receive removable wall panels, with removable car roof, access doors, power door operators, and ventilation.
 - 1. Provide standard railings complying with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 on car tops where required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Materials and Finishes: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Subfloor: Exterior, underlayment-grade plywood, not less than 5/8-inch nominal thickness.
 - 2. Floor Finish: Elevator manufacturer's standard level-loop nylon carpet; color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Plastic-Laminate Wall Panels: Plastic laminate adhesively applied to manufacturer's standard formed metal panels with plastic-laminate panel backing and manufacturer's standard protective edge trim. Panels have a flame-spread index of 75 or less, when tested according to ASTM E 84. Plastic-laminate color, texture, and pattern as selected by Architect from elevator manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Fabricate car with recesses and cutouts for signal equipment.
 - 5. Fabricate car door frame integrally with front wall of car.
 - 6. Stainless-Steel Doors: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless-steel sheet or by laminating stainless-steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled- or powder-coated-steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.
 - 7. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on car doors.
 - 8. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch thick.
 - 9. Light Fixture Efficiency: Not less than 35 lumens/W.
 - 10. Ventilation Fan Efficiency: Not less than 3.0 cfm/W.

2.8 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Manufacturer's standard horizontal-sliding, door-and-frame hoistway entrances complete with track systems, hardware, sills, and accessories. Frame size and profile shall accommodate hoistway wall construction.
- B. Materials and Fabrication: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Stainless-Steel Frames: Formed from stainless-steel sheet.
 - 2. Star of Life Symbol: Identify emergency elevators with star of life symbol, not less than 3 inches high, on both jambs of hoistway door frames.

3. Stainless-Steel Doors: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless-steel sheet or by laminating stainless-steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled- or powder-coated-steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.
4. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch thick.
5. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M.

2.9 SIGNAL EQUIPMENT

- A. General: Provide hall-call and car-call buttons that light when activated and remain lit until call has been fulfilled. Provide vandal-resistant buttons and lighted elements illuminated with LEDs.
- B. Car-Control Stations: Provide manufacturer's standard recessed or semirecessed car-control stations. Mount in return panel adjacent to car door unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Mark buttons and switches for required use or function. Use both tactile symbols and Braille.
 2. Provide "No Smoking" sign matching car-control station, either integral with car-control station or mounted adjacent to it, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Emergency Communication System: Two-way voice communication system, with visible signal, which dials preprogrammed number of monitoring station and does not require handset use. System is contained in flush-mounted cabinet, with identification, instructions for use, and battery backup power supply.
- D. Firefighters' Two-Way Telephone Communication Service: Provide telephone jack in each car and required conductors in traveling cable for firefighters' two-way telephone communication service specified in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System."
- E. Car Position Indicator: Provide illuminated, digital-type car position indicator, located above car door or above car-control station. Also, provide audible signal to indicate to passengers that car is either stopping at or passing each of the floors served. Include travel direction arrows if not provided in car-control station.
- F. Hall Push-Button Stations: Provide one hall push-button station at each landing.
 1. Provide manufacturer's standard wall-mounted units.
 2. Provide telephone jack in each unit for firefighters' two-way telephone communication service specified in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System."
- G. Hall Lanterns: Units with illuminated arrows; however, provide single arrow at terminal landings. Provide the following:
 1. Manufacturer's standard wall-mounted units, for mounting above entrance frames.
- H. Hall Annunciator: With each hall lantern, provide audible signals indicating car arrival and direction of travel. Signals sound once for up and twice for down.

1. At manufacturer's option, audible signals may be placed on cars.

- I. Emergency Pictorial Signs: Fabricate from materials matching hall push-button stations, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that in case of fire, elevators are out of service and exits should be used instead. Provide one sign at each hall push-button station unless otherwise indicated.

2.10 FINISH MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B, exposed, matte finish.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel, Type B, pickled.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- E. Stainless-Steel Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304.
- F. Bronze Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal).
- G. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
- H. Bronze Tubing: ASTM B 135, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
- I. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063.
- J. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B 151/B 151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500 or No. C77600.
- K. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure type complying with NEMA LD 3, Type HGS for flat applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elevator areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify critical dimensions and examine supporting structure and other conditions under which elevator work is to be installed.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cylinder plumb and accurately centered for elevator car position and travel. Anchor securely in place, supported at pit floor and braced at intervals as needed to maintain alignment. Anchor cylinder guides at spacing needed to maintain alignment and avoid overstressing guides.
- B. Welded Construction: Provide welded connections for installing elevator work where bolted connections are not required for subsequent removal or for normal operation, adjustment, inspection, maintenance, and replacement of worn parts. Comply with AWS workmanship and welding operator qualification standards.
- C. Sound Isolation: Mount rotating and vibrating equipment on vibration-isolating mounts to minimize vibration transmission to structure and structure-borne noise due to elevator system.
- D. Install piping above the floor, where possible. Install underground piping in casing.
 - 1. Excavate for piping and backfill encased piping according to applicable requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- E. Lubricate operating parts of systems as recommended by manufacturers.
- F. Alignment: Coordinate installation of hoistway entrances with installation of elevator guide rails for accurate alignment of entrances with car. Where possible, delay installation of sills and frames until car is operable in shaft. Reduce clearances to minimum, safe, workable dimension at each landing.
- G. Leveling Tolerance: 1/4 inch, up or down, regardless of load and travel direction.
- H. Set sills flush with finished floor surface at landing. Fill space under sill solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- I. Locate hall signal equipment for elevators as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. For groups of elevators, locate hall push-button stations between two elevators at center of group or at location most convenient for approaching passengers.
 - 2. Place hall lanterns either above or beside each hoistway entrance.
 - 3. Mount hall lanterns at a minimum of 72 inches above finished floor.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing: On completion of elevator installation and before permitting elevator use (either temporary or permanent), perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and by governing regulations and agencies.
- B. Advise Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction in advance of dates and times that tests are to be performed on elevators.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate, adjust, and maintain elevator(s).
- B. Check operation of elevator with Owner's personnel present before date of Substantial Completion and again not more than one month before end of warranty period. Determine that operation systems and devices are functioning properly.

3.5 MAINTENANCE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of elevator Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper elevator operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 1. Perform maintenance during normal working hours.
 - 2. Perform emergency callback service during normal working hours with response time of two hours or less.
 - 3. Include 24-hour-per-day, 7-day-per-week emergency callback service with response time of two hours or less.

END OF SECTION 142400

SECTION 211313 - FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. Furnish and install an automatic sprinkler system to protect the Gallatin Valley YMCA as indicated herein and as shown on the preliminary working Plans. Connect system to a water supply of sufficient pressure to ensure full and sustained water discharge immediately from sprinklers when opened by fire at rated heat temperatures. Water supply shall conform to NFPA water supply requirements with considerations given to the reliability of the public or private water supply, taking into account probable minimum pressure conditions. The Contractor shall verify site water pressure before submitting Working Plans.
- B. All portions of the systems shall be installed in accordance with the preliminary working plans, Details, and Specifications and as required by jurisdictional authorities and codes. The position is taken that the Owner is entitled to a project that meets or exceeds the minimum requirements of nationally recognized fire protection standards. All efforts and installations shall be directed toward this end. Where there is conflict between the preliminary working plans and/or Specifications, and the requirements of the jurisdictional authorities or codes, the conflict shall be brought to the attention of the Engineer of Record at least ten (10) days prior to Bidding or be resolved at no cost to the Owner. If the Contractor has not identified conflicts to the Engineer of Record, he shall be responsible for complying with the most stringent code or preliminary working drawing methods.
- C. The intent of these Specifications is to describe the complete systems to be installed, including minor details of work or materials not specifically mentioned or shown, but necessary for the successful operation and completion of the installation.
- D. Work to be performed under this section shall include, but not be limited to the following:
 - 1. Excavation, backfill and compaction for the fire sprinkler system supply within 5'-0" of the building.
 - 2. Automatic fire sprinkler systems:
 - a. Wet pipe flow switch system.
 - 1) Pipe and fittings.
 - 2) Hangers and supports.
 - 3) Earthquake bracing.
 - 4) Valves.
 - 5) Alarms.
 - 6) Flow and Tamper Switches.
 - 7) Specialties.
- E. The following areas shall be furnished with an automatic fire protection system of type or types indicated or as required:

1. Entire First floor: Wet systems, Zone 1.
2. Entire Second floor: Wet systems, Zone 1.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. All work performed under this section of the specifications shall be subject to the requirements of both the General and Special Conditions.
- B. Related work specified elsewhere:
 1. Fire Stopping Section 078413
 2. Fire Alarm Section 283111
- C. Examine the complete bid document drawing set and the above referenced Specification parts thoroughly before submitting a Proposal for accomplishment of work in this Section.

1.3 REGULATORY AGENCIES

- A. The term jurisdictional authority used in this Section of the Specification shall include, as applicable, but not be limited to the following:
 1. City of Bozeman Building Department.
 2. City of Bozeman Fire Marshal
 3. Third-party fire protection plan reviewing agency, "Fire Safety Consultants, Incorporated" (FSCI), (1-847-697-1300), (www.firesafetyfsci.com).
 4. Insurance Services Office or Insuring Authority Having Jurisdiction.
 5. Owner.
- B. The design and installation of all systems of fire protection shall conform to all requirements of applicable codes and publications herein defined:
 1. International Building Code (2012).
 2. International Fire Code (2012).
 3. NFPA 13 (2010).
 4. NFPA 24 (2010).
 5. NFPA 25 (2011).
 6. NFPA 72 (2010).
 7. All State and local ordinances.
 8. Underwriters' Laboratories.
 9. American Society of Testing Materials.
 10. American National Standards Institute.
 11. Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. The successful Contractor shall provide submittal data as required under other portions of this Specification. Submittals shall conform to the instructions set forth in the General and Special Conditions of these Specifications entitled Shop Drawings and Submittals.
1. The contractor/installer shall have the system "Working Plans" reviewed and approved by a third-party fire protection plan reviewing agency, "Fire Safety Consultants, Incorporated" (FSCI), (1-248-545-3330), (www.firesafetyfsci.com), to ensure compliance with all local and current national fire codes. Additionally provide FSCI with a copy of:
 - a. Preliminary working plans or bid documents.
 - b. Owner Information Certificate (Provided at the end of specification 211313).
 2. The "Working plans" shall be submitted to the engineer for approval of intent of "Preliminary Plans" per state of Montana requirements.
- B. Installer Reliability: The Installer shall possess a valid State of Montana Fire Sprinkler Contractor's license. The Installer shall have been actively and successfully engaged in the installation of commercial automatic sprinkler systems for the past three years.
- C. Materials and Equipment: All equipment and devices shall be of a make and type listed by UL, FM, or other nationally recognized testing laboratory for the specific purpose for which it is used.
- D. Submit Working Plans (Floor Plans - detailed Working Plans), showing dimensions, ducts, lights, or other items affecting the fire protection systems to jurisdictional agencies for review and approval. All items identified in NFPA 13 for proper Working Plans shall be complied with. The Engineer of Record will reject all Submittals not in compliance. Submit all necessary Working Plans to authorities having jurisdiction. Concurrently, six (6) sets shall be sent to the Engineer of Record for review (alternately, an electronic submittal of to-scale Working Plans will be acceptable). After approvals from jurisdictional agencies have been returned to the Contractor, they shall be submitted to the Engineer of Record for final acceptance. These final acceptance sets shall have all agencies' stamps of review and acceptance.
- E. Working Plans shall be prepared in AutoCAD Version 2010 or compatible software.
- F. The Engineer of Record's review will be for general location only. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to check all drawings for interferences and to do shop fabrication from measurements taken at the job site.
- G. Work on the Project shall not begin until Plans have been reviewed by the Engineer of Record.
- H. Six (6) sets of full catalog information shall be submitted for approval for all materials intended for use on this Project (alternately, an electronic submittal of to-scale Working Plans will be acceptable). Catalog information indicating more than one item shall be highlighted to clearly indicate the proposed equipment.

- I. Record Drawings required per paragraph 1.6 and Operation and Maintenance Manuals required per paragraph 1.7 shall be submitted for approval.
- J. Prepare detailed Working Plans that are signed by a NICET Level III, Level IV Sprinkler Technician or a Registered Professional Engineer practicing in the field of Fire Protection Engineering. As the Working Drawing and Calculation review is for technical adequacy only, the installer remains responsible for correcting any conflicts with other trades and building construction that arise during installation. Partial Submittals will not be accepted. Material Submittals shall be approved prior to purchase or delivery to the job site. Suitably bind Submittals in notebooks or binders and provide index referencing the appropriate Specification Section. Submittals shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 1. Qualifications:
 - a. Provide a copy of the installing Contractor's fire sprinkler state Contractor's license.
 - b. Provide a copy of the NICET certification for the NICET Level III, Level IV Sprinkler Technician who prepared and signed the detailed Working Plans or the Montana License number of the Registered Professional Engineer practicing in the field of Fire Protection Engineering.
 2. Hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 and with design information given on the preliminary working plans and in the specifications.
- K. Manufacturer's Data Sheets: Provide for materials and equipment proposed for use on the system. Include listing information and installation instructions in data sheets. Where data sheet describes items in addition to that item being submitted, clearly identify proposed item on the sheet.
- L. Re-submittals: A summary of submittal changes will be required for each re-submittal. This summary should briefly reiterate the original comment and give specific direction on how the issue was resolved. Changes made that are not a result of submittal review comments shall be clearly identified in this summary as well.

1.5 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. The Contractor shall investigate the structural, mechanical, electrical, and finished conditions affecting the piping, and shall arrange the equipment accordingly; furnish required fittings, offsets and accessories. Route fire protection piping to avoid interference with duct work and drain piping. In the event it becomes necessary to make field changes in pipe locations due to building construction, the Contractor shall consult with the Engineer of Record before making any changes. Any such changes required shall be made without added cost to the Owner.
- B. The Contractor shall determine, and be responsible for, the proper locations and type of inserts for hangers, chases, sleeves, and other openings in the construction required for fire protection work, and shall obtain this information well in advance of the construction progress to avoid delay of the work.
- C. All fees and permits specifically required for fire protection work, not obtained by others as specified elsewhere shall be applied for and paid for by this Contractor.

- D. All systems of fire protection shall be installed by a licensed (for the location of installation) Fire Protection Contractor, fully experienced in fire protection installation as specified herein. Fire Protection Contractors may be required to provide in writing, specific information as to successfully completed projects and references to show cause as to why they should be considered acceptable to the Engineer of Record.
- E. Fire protection system shutdowns shall be coordinated and implemented by the Contractor as preplanned impairments per NFPA 25 Chapter 15 and its related Annexes. Where any fire protection system will be placed out of service for more than 10 hours in a 24-hour period, an approved fire watch shall be provided until the system is restored to normal working order. Impairments shall be coordinated with the Owner and other trades to minimize conflict and inconvenience.

1.6 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. One approved set of preliminary working plans and one set of Working Plans shall be maintained on the job at all times.
- B. One set of "As-Built" Drawings shall be kept on the job at all times. "As-Built" Drawings shall be kept current daily. "As-Built" Drawings shall be available at all times to Engineer of Record for review and use.
- C. One reproducible set of "As-Built" Drawings shall be provided to the Engineer of Record upon completion of the work.

1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Three (3) sets of operating and maintenance instructions shall be provided to the Owner upon completion. Manuals shall include, as a minimum, the following:
 - 1. "As-Built" Drawings.
 - 2. Revised hydraulic calculations based on "As-Built" Drawings.
 - 3. Catalog cut sheets of all materials installed.
 - 4. Equipment maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Contractor's Material and Test Certificates.
 - 6. Certification of Owner Training.
 - 7. Contractor Guarantee and Warranty.
 - 8. "As-Built" AutoCAD drawing (.dwg) file or equal on CD disk.
- B. One (1) factory-bound edition of NFPA 25 shall be provided to the Owner.

1.8 TRAINING

- A. The Fire Protection Contractor shall instruct the Owner in the operation of the systems. Instruction shall continue until the Owner is fully satisfied that he understands the operation of his system.

- B. Contractor shall obtain Owner's dated signature that all training has been accomplished and is acceptable to the Owner.

1.9 GUARANTEES AND WARRANTIES

- A. The Fire Protection Contractor shall guarantee to the Owner in writing, all equipment and workmanship for a period of one (1) year after the fire protection system has been placed in continuous service and has been accepted by all authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. The Fire Protection Contractor shall not be held responsible for improper or negligent maintenance by the Owner after operating and maintenance indoctrination has been given to the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SPRINKLERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Tyco.
 - 2. Victaulic.
 - 3. Viking.
 - 4. Reliable.
- B. Install sprinklers from reviewed Working Plans.
- C. All sprinklers shall be of similar design and from a single manufacturer.
- D. The operating temperature of sprinklers shall be as required by the specific location of installation.
- E. Extended coverage sprinklers shall not be used unless specified in the preliminary working plans.
- F. Sprinklers shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 13, as indicated in the preliminary working plans, and as follows:
 - 1. Brass upright or pendent may be used in all attics, mechanical, storage or other non-public spaces.
 - 2. Recessed shall be used in all finished areas, offices, patient rooms, etc. unless otherwise noted.
 - 3. Where surface mounted obstructions will not allow for recessed installation, two-piece escutcheons may be used to extend sprinklers to a maximum deflector distance as allowed by NFPA or U.L. listing with prior approval of the architect.
 - 4. Concealed sprinklers shall be used as indicated on the preliminary working plans.
 - 5. Sidewall sprinklers may be used in accordance with listing and jurisdictional requirements.
 - 6. All sprinklers shall be quick-response glass bulb type when applicable.

7. Sprinklers with deflectors less than 7'-6" above the finished floor shall have sprinkler guards.
 8. Pendent sprinklers in mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, and janitor closets shall have sprinkler guards.
 9. Sprinklers in wet locations shall be corrosion resistant.
- G. Escutcheons for seismic areas shall be oversized expansion plate type to allow 1" clearance

2.2 FLEXIBLE SPRINKLER HOSE FITTINGS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
- B. Flexible sprinkler hose fittings for use in commercial suspended and gypsum board ceilings may be used as a contractors' option to hard pipe armover and drops per NFPA and installed per the manufacturers' listing.
- C. All flexible sprinkler hose fittings shall be UL listed and FM approved.
- D. Provide flexible hose assemblies and end fittings with 100% Type 304 Stainless steel, with a 175 psi maximum rated pressure. Flexible hose assemblies shall be fully welded non mechanical fittings, braided, leak tested with minimum 1 inch true bore internal corrugated hose diameter.
- E. Flexible hose assemblies shall have G90 galvanized steel ceiling bracket, direct attachment type, having integrated snap on clip ends positively attached to the ceiling using tamper resistant screws. Provide flexible hose attachment with removable hub type with set screw.

2.3 PIPE AND FITTINGS-EXTERIOR

- A. Piping underground shall be Class 52 cement lined ductile iron pipe or as required by the local utility company a minimum of 5'-0" from the building. Straight runs of pipe with no offsets may be rubber joint with bell and spigot. All fittings shall consist of mechanical joint type.
- B. All buried pipe and fittings shall be installed in a sand bedded trench, 6 inches under pipe and filled with sand to 12 inches minimum above pipe.
- C. Block or rod underground piping and fittings for static and surge pressures. Furnish and install concrete thrust blocks and joint ties at each change in direction of all underground piping in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 24 requirements. Set screw ("Mega-Lug") restraint shall be used in addition to concrete thrust blocks.
- D. Prior to connection to existing water line, the Water Authority Having Jurisdiction shall be contacted for inspection and the procedures used.

- E. All underground installations of pipe, fittings, and valves shall conform to NFPA 13 and NFPA 24 requirements.

2.4 PIPE AND FITTINGS-INTERIOR

- A. Interior piping for automatic sprinkler system shall conform to NFPA 13 and as follows:
 - 1. Pipe and fittings shall be products manufactured in the United States of America.
 - 2. Wet system sprinkler piping above ground with threaded fittings shall be Schedule 40, Eddy-Thread or equal black steel pipe with a corrosion resistance rating equal to or greater than 1.0. Threaded thinwall pipe with a CRR less than 1.0 shall not be used.
 - 3. Fittings for threaded and coupled pipe shall consist of cast iron, ductile iron, or malleable threaded fittings joined with Teflon tape thread sealing compound or pipe joint compound. Pressure rating of fittings shall be as required for application.
 - 4. Wet system sprinkler piping above ground with grooved fittings for sizes 2-1/2-inch and larger shall be roll grooved Schedule 10, Eddy-Flow or equal black steel pipe with a corrosion resistance rating equal to or greater than 1.0
 - 5. Fittings for grooved end pipe shall consist of Tyco Grinnell Series ductile iron or equal ductile iron couplings and fittings in accordance with NFPA 13. Gaskets shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the application.
 - 6. Pipe and fittings serving and within wet areas as indicated in the preliminary working plans shall be galvanized.
- B. Fittings for plain end pipe shall not be used.
- C. Mechanical Outlet or Strap Outlet type fittings shall not be used in new system installations.
- D. CPVC piping shall not be used.
- E. Alternate piping systems approved by NFPA 13 may be allowed with prior approval of the Engineer of Record.
- F. All piping shall be identified with pre-manufactured piping identification labels.
- G. All drain piping and fittings shall be galvanized.
- H. All Fire Department Connection piping and fittings up-stream of check valve shall be galvanized.
- I. All black steel wet system sprinkler pipe shall be supplied with a factory-applied antibacterial coating. Antibacterial coating shall be proven to minimize the effects of Microbiologically Influenced Corrosion (MIC) and shall be compatible with all system components.

2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Space pipe hangers in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 13. Construct hangers, hanger rods, inserts and clamps as approved by the same.

2.6 EARTHQUAKE BRACING

- A. Furnish and install all earthquake bracing as required by NFPA 13, Authority Having Jurisdiction, Owner's insurer, and as follows:
1. Seismic Coefficient (Cp) force factor requirements are provided and shown on the preliminary working plans.
 2. In structures of seismic design categories D the requirements for the hangers and piping shall follow the requirements of ASCE standard 7-10.
 3. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
 4. Seismic expansion loops shall be Metraflex or equal with a minimum of 4" of movement listed for fire sprinkler systems.

2.7 VALVES

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Mueller.
2. Kennedy.
3. Nibco.
4. Tyco.
5. AGF.
6. United Brass.
7. Victaulic.
8. Watts.

- B. Gate valves shall be approved indicating type as required by NFPA 13. Check valves shall be as required by NFPA 13. Test and drain valves shall be approved brass globe, angle, or ball valves. Locate sprinkler system isolation valves as shown on the drawings and as required per NFPA 13 complete with a tamper alarm switch.

- C. Interior:

1. Interior Gate:
 - a. Make: Nibco.
 - b. Sizes: 2½ inches, 3 inches, 4 inches, 6 inches and 8 inches.
 - c. Ends: Flanged.
 - d. Model: F-607-OTS.

2. Interior Butterfly:

- a. Make: Tyco
- b. Sizes: 2½ inches through 10 inches.
- c. Ends: Grooved.
- d. Model: BFV-N

Note: Butterfly valves may be used in lieu of OS&Y valves at the Contractor's option for 2 ½ inches and larger valves. Exception: Suction side of Fire Pumps shall be OS&Y valves.

3. Interior Butterfly (Normally Closed):

- a. Make: Victaulic
- b. Sizes: 2 inches through 8 inches.
- c. Ends: Grooved.
- d. Model: FireLock 707C

4. Ball Valve:

- a. Make: Watts
- b. Sizes: ¼ inch to 2 inches.
- c. Ends: Threaded.
- d. Model: WBV

5. Check Valves:

- a. Make: Tyco
- b. Sizes: 2 ½ inches, 3 inches, 4 inches and 6 inches.
- c. Ends: Grooved.
- d. Model: CV-1F.

6. Drain Valves Interior:

- a. Make: United Brass
- b. Sizes: ½ inch through 2 inches.
- c. Ends: Threaded.
- d. Model: 125 SUL

7. Test N Drain:

- a. Make: AGF.
- b. Sizes: 1 inch through 2 inches.
- c. Ends: Threaded.
- d. Model: 1011, 1000, and 1011T.

2.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTION DEVICES

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Febco.
2. Ames.
3. Watts.

- B. Install new backflow prevention devices as required by the Water Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- C. Devices shall be UL or FM approved.
- D. Hydraulic flow rate shall fall below the UL Tested flow rate of the device.

2.9 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 1. Potter Roemer.
 2. Croker.
- B. Furnish and install where shown on Plans and approved by Authority Having Jurisdiction fire department connections, complete with clapper, plugs and chains.
- C. Finish shall consist of Polished Brass.
- D. Fire department connections shall be set 2 feet 6 inches above grade.
- E. Connections for sprinkler system shall be indexed "auto spkr". The indexing shall be "cast in" by the manufacturer. Required indexing shall be permanently installed directly above the connection.
- F. Connection shall be a two-way inlet complete with interior single swing clapper, Knox locking caps, and shall have threads to meet the local fire department requirements. Provide an automatic ball-drip piped to exterior with galvanized pipe.
- G. Number of outlets shall be provided to allow a maximum of 250 GPM per inlet of combined fire sprinkler and inside hose stream demands.

2.10 SPECIALTIES

- A. Fire Seals:
 1. Where piping passes through walls, floors or other building construction which by code requires a fire rating, approved fire rated assemblies shall be used. Proposed protection shall be submitted for approval. Plans shall clearly indicate details and locations of required protection.
- B. Escutcheon Plates:

1. Where exposed piping passes through finish work, chrome plated wall plates or other wall plate finishes acceptable to the Engineer of Record, shall be installed. All wall plates shall be metal.
2. Split wall plates or escutcheons shall only be used in remodel projects. Split wall plates or escutcheons shall be installed to fit snugly around piping. All wall plates shall be metal.
3. Solid galvanized wall plates shall be used at both sides of all exterior walls.

C. Valve Identification:

1. All valves within the building shall have permanently marked identification signs provided in accordance with NFPA 13 standards. Signs shall be manufactured and not hand written. Signs shall be hung with galvanized or chrome chain.

D. Spare Sprinkler Supply:

1. Furnish and install a supply of extra sprinklers of each type and degree link installed in the project, complete with mountable cabinet. Mount cabinet on wall next to sprinkler entry; provide wrenches for each type of sprinkler installed in cabinet. Provide a list of all sprinklers installed throughout the property in the spare sprinkler cabinet as required by NFPA 13.

E. Piping Identification:

1. All piping shall be identified at 40' maximum spacing and a minimum of one identification label per room. Labels shall be Seton wrap around style or equal.

2.11 WET SYSTEM RISER MANIFOLD

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Tyco
2. Viking
3. Reliable

B. Install Riser manifold complete with necessary integral test and drain valve with test orifice, and pressure relief valve where shown on the drawings. Assembly shall have an integral flow switch with contacts for wiring to the fire alarm system.

C. The manifold shall be ductile iron and finished in corrosion resistant red paint.

D. The manifold shall be UL listed and FM approved.

E. A Tyco CV-1F check valve shall be provided at the base of each wet system riser manifold. Ensure adequate distance between check valve and waterflow alarm switch per switch manufacturer's installation instructions.

2.12 ELECTRICAL DEVICES

- A. All electrical devices shall be coordinated with Electrical (Division 26) and Fire Alarm (Section 283111) requirements for compatibility of voltages and manufacturer.
- B. Flow Switch:
 - 1. Potter VSR.
 - 2. Potter VSR-S.
- C. Tamper Switch:
 - 1. Potter OSYSU-2.
 - 2. Potter PCVS-2.
 - 3. Potter RBVS.
- D. Audio/Visual Alarm Indicating Appliances:
 - 1. Audio/Visual units shall provide a common enclosure for the fire alarm audible and visual alarm devices. The housing shall be designed to accommodate either horns, bells, or chimes. The unit shall be complete with a tamper resistant, Pyramidal shaped lens with "Fire" lettering visible from a 180 degree field of view. Integral Xenon strobe shall provide a minimum light output of 4.5 candela at 24VDC at a 45 flashes per minute rate. Xenon strobes shall provide a 4-wire connection to insure properly supervised in/out system connection. Unit shall be complete with all mounting hardware including backbox.

2.13 FORWARD FLOW TEST HEADER

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Potter Roemer.
 - 2. Croker.
- B. Furnish and install where shown on plans.
- C. Set test connections 3 feet above exterior grade or as required by the Fire Marshal.
- D. Provide finish plate indicating "Forward Flow Test" and Caps with Chains.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. Design Basis Information: Provide design, materials, equipment, installation, inspection, and testing of the automatic sprinkler system in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 13 and the following:

1. Recommendations in annexes shall be treated as requirements.
 2. Sprinkler Protection: To determine spacing and sizing, apply the following coverage classifications:
 - a. See occupancy design table and notes on the preliminary working plans.
 - b. Request clarification from the Architect for any hazard classification not identified.
 3. Perform hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 utilizing the Area/Density method. Provide a hydraulic placard for each zone, occupancy hazard, and each floor of the building minimum.
 4. The room design method is not allowed unless indicated in the preliminary working plans.
 5. Quick response sprinkler reductions are not allowed unless indicated on the preliminary working plans.
 6. Minimum design areas shall be 1500 sf, including residential sprinkler designs unless otherwise indicated on the preliminary working plans.
 7. Flexible sprinkler assemblies shall be included in hydraulic calculations using the UL listing equivalent length of Schedule 40, nominal 1 inch diameter pipe.
 8. Hydraulic calculated demand including hose stream requirements shall fall no less than 20 psi below the available water supply curve.
 9. Velocities shall not exceed 20 feet per second in any pipe.
 10. Water Supply: Base water supply on a flow test as shown on Preliminary working plans.
 - a. City water supply infrastructure was not in place at the time of design and supply flow data was not able to be measured at the site. System design shall be based upon the flow test data and location shown on the plans.
- B. The preliminary working plans indicate approximate locations of sprinklers and conceptual routing of piping. Final spacing and layout is the responsibility of this contractor and final approval of the layout and routing is to be by the Engineer of Record.
- C. The fire protection system supplier shall design the piping to supply the system. Piping shall be laid out so as not to interfere with the installation of other piping, ductwork, light fixtures, or equipment.
- D. The entire sprinkler system is not shown on Plans. The intent is to provide complete sprinkler systems as required. This Contractor shall be responsible for surveying the site, existing construction, new construction, and the complete contract document set and prepare Working Plans for the total system.
- E. All piping shall be run concealed wherever possible. Where piping is run exposed, special notation on Contractor's Working Plans to that effect shall be evident and conspicuous on the

Working Plans. Any piping determined to be a problem shall be relocated at no cost to the Owner.

- F. System piping to be hydraulically calculated in accordance with NFPA 13 Chapter 22 (2010).

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Furnish sprinkler system with the following components:
 - 1. Systems shall be equipped with a supervised isolation valve and an approved flow alarm connected to the building fire alarm system.
 - 2. A Fire Department Connection shall be installed on the system side of the water supply check valve complete with its own check valve and ball drip.
 - 3. A main drain shall be installed on each riser or sectional zone control valve and shall drain to the exterior or to an adequate drain connection.
 - 4. Auxiliary drains shall be provided when a change in piping direction prevents drainage of sections of branch lines or mains through the main drain valve.
 - 5. A test pipe of not less than 1 inch diameter terminating in an orifice equivalent to one sprinkler shall be provided for each system or sectional zone.
 - 6. Exterior alarm shall be installed as near as practical to Fire Department Connection with identification sign. Exterior horn/strobe shall be wired to alarm system.
- B. Installation shall be accomplished by the licensed Contractor. Provide a qualified technician, experienced in the installation and operation of the type of system being installed, to supervise the installation and testing of the system.
- C. Delivery, storage, and handling of materials to and on the construction site shall be consistent with good practices, manufacturers' requirements, and the following procedures. Components shall be protected from moisture, dirt, and debris. Storage shall be elevated above grade and protected from damage. Provide adequate ventilation to prevent condensation. Deliver piping and valves with protective caps installed; if removal of protection is required for inspection, reinstall for storage. Store piping in a manner to prevent sagging or bending. CPVC or other plastic piping shall be protected from direct sunlight. Any deficiencies discovered in the delivery, storage, or handling of materials shall be recorded and remedied immediately in such a way as to minimize damage and preserve the integrity of the system and components.
- D. Installation of Piping:
 - 1. Ensure the ends of all sprinkler system pipes are smooth and free of any burrs or fins. To help reduce the potential for accelerated internal pipe corrosion of longitudinally welded black steel pipe, install such pipe with the weld line rotated at least 45 in relationship to the floor (for reference, the weld line points at the floor at 0).
 - 2. Dry and preaction systems: Internally and externally cold galvanize all threaded and roll grooved ends cut in the field. Properly clean the pipe per manufacturer's instruction before applying the finish.
 - 3. Accurately cut pipe to measurements established by the installer and work into place without springing or forcing. In any situations where bending of the pipe is required, use a standard pipe-bending template.

4. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
 5. Install concealed piping in spaces that have finished ceilings. Pipe installed near equipment shall not block or encroach on equipment access or impede maintenance. Where ceiling mounted equipment exists, install sprinklers so as not to obstruct the movement or operation of the equipment or block access. Sidewall sprinklers may need to be utilized.
 6. Locate piping in stairways as near to the ceiling as possible to prevent tampering by unauthorized personnel, and to provide a minimum headroom clearance of seven feet six inches. To prevent an obstruction to egress, provide piping clearances in accordance with NFPA 101.
 7. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2" and larger end connections.
 8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
 9. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
 10. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- E. Installation of Valves:
1. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2" and smaller.
 2. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
 3. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
 4. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- F. Welding: Conform to the requirements and recommendations of NFPA 13.
- G. Drains: Pipe drains to discharge at safe points outside of the building or to sight cones attached to drains of adequate size to readily carry the full flow from each drain under maximum pressure. Do not provide a direct drain connection to sewer system or discharge into sinks. Install drum drips and drains where necessary and required by NFPA 13. Locations of drains shall be indicated on shop and as-built drawings. A map of all drain locations shall be permanently affixed to a visible location near the fire riser to aid in their identification.
- H. Waterflow Alarm Switches: Install waterflow switch and adjacent valves in easily accessible locations.
- I. Inspector's Test Connection: Install and supply in conformance with NFPA 13, locate in a secured area, and discharge to the exterior of the Building.

- J. Affix cutout disks, which are created by cutting holes in the walls of pipe for flow switches and non-threaded pipe connections to the respective waterflow switch or pipe connection near to the pipe from where they were cut.
- K. Sleeves: Provide for pipes passing through masonry or concrete Schedule 10 pipe. Provide space between the pipe and the sleeve in accordance with NFPA 13. Seal this space with a UL Listed through penetration fire stop material per UL assembly listings.
- L. Provide pressure gauge at each water flow alarm switch location, riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection at the top of each standpipe, at the inlet side of all double check or reduced pressure backflow assembly, and at each main drain connection. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS ¼" and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- M. Provide a pressure relief valve at each system riser or zone riser as required.
- N. For each fire department connection, provide the symbolic sign given in NFPA 170 and locate 8 to 10 feet above each connection location. Size sign 18 by 18 inches with the symbol being at least 14 by 14 inches.
- O. Securely attach identification signs and tags to control valves, drain valves, and test valves. Locate hydraulic placard information signs at each sectional control valve where there is a zone water flow switch. A map of any isolation valves installed in the building at locations other than on the fire riser in the riser room shall be permanently affixed to a visible location near the fire riser to aid in their identification.
- P. Repair damage to the building or equipment resulting from the installation of the sprinkler system by the installer at no additional expense to the Owner.
- Q. Where details of installation are not given, the installation shall be made using manufacturer's recommended practices or at the direction of the Engineer of Record.
- R. This Contractor shall complete the fire protection systems ready for operation, in all respects, as soon as possible. When system is complete and ready for continuous operation, activate the system for its intended use. After system has been activated for continuous use, water charges will be paid by the Owner.
- S. This Contractor shall remove from the building all rubbish and unused materials due to or connected with this installation. This contractor is responsible for proper removal and disposal of all demolition items, as indicated on the plans or no longer required for a complete operational system, in conformance with the Division 01 - General Requirements.
- T. All piping and components shall be cleaned and left ready for painting in good condition and free of damage, leakage, and corrosion.

3.3 TESTING

- A. This Contractor shall call for inspection and complete Contractor's Material and Test Certificates per NFPA 13 Chapter 10 "Underground Piping" and Chapter 24 (2010) "Systems Acceptance". The Forms shall be signed by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. The entire sprinkler system shall be hydrostatically tested at not less than 200 psig pressure for a period of not less than two (2) hours with no pressure drop in the system.
- C. The underground fire service main shall be hydrostatically tested at not less than 200 psig pressure for a period of not less than two (2) hours with no pressure drop in the system.
- D. All testing shall be witnessed by a representative of the Engineer of Record or Owner.
- E. Where jurisdictional authority's or NFPA 13 standards are more stringent than the above test, they shall prevail.

END OF SECTION 211313



OWNER'S INFORMATION CERTIFICATE

Name / Address of property to be protected with sprinkler protection:

Gallatin Valley YMCA Community Center

Baxter Lane

Bozeman, Montana

Name of Owner: Andrea Stevenson (Owner representative)

Existing or planned construction is:

- Fire resistive or noncombustible
- Wood frame or ordinary (masonry walls with wood beams)
- Unknown

Is the system installation intended for one of the following special occupancies:

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| Aircraft hangar | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Fixed guideway transit system | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Race track stable | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Marine terminal, pier, or wharf | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Airport terminal | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Aircraft engine test facility | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Power plant | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Water-cooling tower | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |

If the answer to any of the above is "yes" the appropriate NFPA standard should be referenced for sprinkler density / area criteria.

Indicate whether any of the following special materials are intended to be present:

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| Flammable or combustible liquid | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Aerosol products | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Nitrate film | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Pyroxylin plastic | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Compressed or liquefied gas cylinders | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Liquid or solid oxidizers | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Organic peroxide formulations | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Idle pallets | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |

If the answer to any of the above is "yes" describe type, location, arrangement, and intended maximum quantities.

Indicate whether the protection is intended for one of the following specialized occupancies or areas:

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------|--|
| Spray area or mixing room | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Solvent extraction | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Laboratory using chemicals | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Oxygen-fuel gas system for welding or cutting | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Acetylene cylinder charging | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Production or use of compressed or liquefied gasses | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Commercial cooking operation | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Class A hyperbaric chamber | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Cleanroom | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Incinerator or waste handling system | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Linen handling system | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |
| Water-cooling tower | <input type="checkbox"/> Yes | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No |

If the answer to any of the above is "yes" describe the type, location, arrangement, and intended maximum quantities.

Will there be any storage of products over 12 ft. (3.6 m.) in height? Yes No

If the answer is "yes" describe product, intended storage arrangement, and height.

Will there be any storage of plastic, rubber, or similar products over 5 ft. (1.5 m.) high except as described above?

Yes No

If the answer is "yes" describe product, intended storage arrangement, and height.

Assumptions:

I certify that I have knowledge of the intended use of the property and that the above information is correct.

Signature of Owner's Representative or Agent: CTA Inc. Signature and stamp of FPE on Preliminary Working Plan.

Date: 4/28/16

Relationship and firm of Agent Fire Protection Consultant
(please print):

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes domestic water piping inside the building.
- B. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility company.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Press Seal Joint Installation Training Certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water piping and components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Pipe and Fitting Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Transition Couplings for Aboveground Pressure Piping: Coupling or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types K and L, water tube, annealed temper.
 - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 2. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
 - 3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
 - 4. Copper Press Seal-Fittings: Shall conform to the material requirements of ASME B16.22 copper and ASME B22.18 Bronze and the performance requirements of IAPMO PS117.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation.
 - 2) NIBCO, Inc.
 - 3) Tyco GRINNELL.
 - 4) Viega.
 - b. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper or lead-free bronze fitting with EPDM sealing element in each end and un-pressed fitting leak identification feature.
 - c. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Lead-free bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM sealing element in each end, 420 stainless grip ring, PBT separator ring and un-pressed fitting leak identification feature.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M, water tube, drawn temper.
 - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 2. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping
 - 3. Copper Unions. MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
 - 4. Copper Press-Seal Fittings: Shall conform to the material requirements of ASME B16.18 bronze and ASME B16.22 copper, and the performance requirements of IAPMO PS117.
 - 5. Copper Press Seal Fittings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Elkhart Products Corporation.
 - 2) NIBCO, Inc.
 - 3) Tyco GRINNELL.
 - 4) Viega.
- b. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper or lead-free bronze fitting with EPDM sealing element in each end.
 - c. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Lead-free bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM sealing element in each end, 420 stainless grip ring, PBT separator ring and un-pressed fitting, leak identification feature.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 02 Section "Earthwork."

3.2 PIPE AND FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges may be used on aboveground piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-Building-Slab, Water-Service Piping on Service Side of Water Meter: Refer to Division 02 Section "Water Distribution."
- D. Under-Building-Slab, Domestic Water Piping on House Side of Water Meter, NPS 2 and Smaller: Soft copper tube, Type K; copper pressure fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Aboveground Domestic Water Piping: Use the following piping materials:
 1. NPS 6 and Smaller: Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. NPS 1/2 to NPS 4: Hard copper tube, Type L; copper or lead-free bronze press-seal-fittings.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 1. Shutoff Duty: Use bronze ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 2. Throttling Duty: Use bronze ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3. Hot-Water-Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.
1. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
- D. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow.
- E. Shutoff Duty: Use bronze press-seal ball valves for NPS 2 and smaller type L copper tube.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install under-building-slab copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- B. Install sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight.
- C. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance.
- D. Install water-pressure regulators downstream from shutoff valves.
- E. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.
- F. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Press Seal Joints: Shall be installed using the most current edition of the manufactures installation guidelines. A factory trained field representative shall provide on-site training for the Contractor's field personnel engaged in the operation and installation of pressure-sealed-joints. Upon completion of this training the installing Contractor must submit documentation, which includes those in attendance, from the grooved products manufacturer to CTA. The factory trained representative shall periodically visit the jobsite, review the product installation

and provide additional training if new manpower has been assigned to pressure-sealed-joint piping installation. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.

3.6 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Rough-in domestic water piping for water meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- B. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility company.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- B. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- C. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- D. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve, and extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water supply and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect domestic water piping as follows:

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Test domestic water piping as follows:

1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
7. After press-seal fittings have been installed a "step test" shall be followed. Utilizing air, water, or dry nitrogen, pressurize the system not to exceed 85 psi. Walk the system and check for leaks. If you do not locate any leaks proceed to pressurize the system to the recommended pressures, not to exceed 600 psi. Should you locate a leaking joint that has not been pressed, relieve the pressure from the system, insure the tube is fully inserted into the fitting and proceed to press the fitting. Should you locate a fitting that is leaking that has been previously pressed, you can press the fitting a second time. Resume test procedure, after the necessary repairs have been made.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
4. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and plugs used for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
5. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
6. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
7. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing domestic water piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if methods are not prescribed, procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or as described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Wall hydrants.
8. Drain valves.
9. Water hammer arresters.
10. Air vents.
11. Trap-seal primer valves.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NSF Compliance:

1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
 - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Legend Valve.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Prier Products, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1011.

3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Rough bronze.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.

3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

2.4 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - d. Nexus Valves.
 - e. NIBCO INC.
 - f. TAC Americas.
 - g. Taco, Inc.
 - h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze, Lead Free
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

2.5 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Leonard Valve Company.
 - e. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - f. Symmons Industries, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Type: Exposed-mounting, thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.

7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.

2.6 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Drain: Pipe plug.

2.7 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

B. Moderate-Climate Wall Hydrants:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
6. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
8. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
9. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

2.8 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400 psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 threaded or solder joint.

6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 200 psig minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: NPS 1/8 side outlet with cap.

2.9 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. PPP Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - h. Watts Drainage Products, Inc.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.10 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. PPP Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.

4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve,.
- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
 1. Install shutoff valve on outlet if specified.
 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

- J. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Mechanical Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE, VENT AND STORM DRAIN PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, Vent and Storm Drain Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AB&I Foundry.
 2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 3. Tyler Pipe.
- B. Below Grade Pipe and Fittings: All below grade Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and fittings shall conform to the requirements of CISPI Standard 301 and ASTM A 888. All pipe & fittings shall be American made and tested, no imported pipe is acceptable.
- C. Above Grade Pipe and Fittings: All above grade Hubless Cast Iron Pipe and fittings shall conform to the requirements of CISPI Standard 301 and ASTM-888 and shall be marked with the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institutes collective trademarks. All pipe and fittings shall be American made and tested, no imported pipe is acceptable.
- D. Documentation: At the request of the engineer the manufacturer shall furnish the following information to confirm Compliance with CISPI 301:
1. Radiation Screening records.
 2. Mechanical Testing records.
 3. Chemical Testing records.
 4. Dimensional Inspection reports.
 5. Certificate letter from manufacturer with legal name and address.
- E. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings: Couplings shall conform to CISPI standard 310.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Dallas Specialty and Mfg. Co.
 - c. Fernco Inc.
 - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - g. Stant.
 - h. Tyler Pipe.
 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- F. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp.
 - c. Dallas Specialty and Mfg. Co.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - f. Stant.
 - g. Tyler Pipe.
2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
 1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers"

2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste drainage, vent and storm drain piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- O. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- P. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- Q. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- R. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- B. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- C. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
 - 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
 - D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
 - E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
 - F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
 - H. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - I. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
 - J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC and Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage, vent and storm drain piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, soil, waste and storm drain piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- B. Aboveground, soil, waste and storm drain piping NPS 5 and larger shall be and of the following:
 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be and of the following:

1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Underground, soil, waste, vent and storm drain piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be and of the following:
1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Underground, soil, waste and storm drain piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following drainage piping specialties:
 - 1. Cleanouts.
 - 2. Floor drains.
 - 3. Trench drains.
 - 4. Roof drains.
 - 5. Miscellaneous drainage piping specialties.
 - 6. Flashing materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PUR: Polyurethane plastic.
- H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary and storm piping specialty components.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Closure: Stainless steel plug with seal.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.

- d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
 4. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
 5. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
 6. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
 7. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
 8. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
 9. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
 10. Size: Same as connected branch.
 11. Housing: Stainless steel.
 12. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
 13. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
8. Wall Access: Round Square, wall-installation frame and cover.

D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Canplas LLC.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. NDS Inc.
 - d. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.

- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body: PVC.
4. Closure Plug: PVC.
5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: See schedule on Drawings
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.

2.3 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: See schedule on Drawings.
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.

2.4 ROOF DRAINS

A. Metal Roof Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: See schedule on Drawings.
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
3. Pattern: Roof drain.
4. Body Material: Cast iron Copper.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

B. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

C. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

D. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

E. Conductor Nozzles:

1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. General Use: 4.0 lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0 lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
 3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.
- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft..
 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft..
- C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40 mil minimum thickness.
- E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.

3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- I. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic stacks at floor penetrations.
- J. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 07.
1. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so that there will be no leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- K. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- L. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

- M. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- N. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- O. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- P. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- Q. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- R. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- S. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Plumbing Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
 - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

- D. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following fuel-fired water heaters:
 - 1. Commercial, high-efficiency, gas water heaters.
 - 2. Water heater accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial water heater, signed by product manufacturer.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of water heaters through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of water heaters and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- E. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9" for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, GAS WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, High-Efficiency, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. AERCO International.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - d. Rheem Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Ruud Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Smith, A. O. Water Products Company.
 - g. State Industries, Inc.

2. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 95 percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions. Following features and attributes may be modified or omitted if water heater otherwise complies with requirements for performance.
3. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150 psig minimum working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
4. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
5. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for high-efficiency water heaters and for natural-gas fuel.
6. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
7. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
8. Energy Management System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

2.3 COMPRESSION TANKS

- A. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. AMTROL Inc.

- b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
- c. Flexcon Industries.
- d. State Industries, Inc.
- e. Taco, Inc.
- f. Watts Regulator Co.

2. Construction:

- a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

2.4 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CGA 9.1, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- B. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select each relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 1. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- C. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
- D. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Provide dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4.
- E. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
- C. Prepare test reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Install seismic restraints for commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
- C. Install gas water heaters according to NFPA 54.
- D. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supplies to gas water heaters without shutoff valves.
- E. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater, relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install water heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains.
- G. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping" for thermometers.
- H. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- I. Fill water heaters with water.
- J. Charge compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other related Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial water heaters. Refer to Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 223400

SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:

1. Faucets for lavatories showers and sinks.
2. Laminar-flow faucet-spout outlets.
3. Flushometers.
4. Toilet seats.
5. Protective shielding guards.
6. Fixture supports.
7. Water closets.
8. Urinals.
9. Lavatories.
10. Individual showers.
11. Kitchen sinks.
12. Service basins.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
 - 1. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
 - 2. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
 - 3. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
 - 1. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 2. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 3. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 - 4. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
 - 5. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 - 6. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 7. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for shower faucets:
 - 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
 - 3. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
 - 4. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
 - 5. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 6. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
 - 7. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 - 8. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.

- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
 3. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
 4. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
 2. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
 3. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 4. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
 5. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 6. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
 7. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory Faucets:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Chicago Faucets.
 - d. Delta Faucet Company.
 - e. Eljer.
 - f. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - g. Kohler Co.
 - h. Moen, Inc.
 - i. Speakman Company.
 - j. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - k. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - l. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
 2. Description: Single-control mixing valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor. See schedule on Drawings

2.2 SHOWER FAUCETS

A. Shower Faucets:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Delta Faucet Company.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. Leonard Valve Company.
 - f. Moen, Inc.
 - g. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - h. Symmons Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Single-handle pressure-balance valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and shower head, arm, and flange. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and outlet with diverter valve. See schedule on Drawings.

2.3 SINK FAUCETS

A. Sink Faucets:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Chicago Faucets.
 - c. Delta Faucet Company.
 - d. Eljer.
 - e. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - f. Kohler Co.
 - g. Moen, Inc.
 - h. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
2. Description: Service sink faucet with stops in shanks, vacuum breaker, hose-thread outlet, and pail hook and Bar sink faucet. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor. See schedule on Drawings.

2.4 FLUSHOMETERS

A. Flushometers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company.
 - b. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
2. Description: Flushometer for urinal and water-closet-type fixture. Include brass body with corrosion-resistant internal components, non-hold-open feature, control stop with check valve, vacuum breaker, copper or brass tubing, and polished chrome-plated finish on exposed parts. See schedule on Drawings.

2.5 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Church Seats.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. Olsonite Corp.
2. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture. See schedule on Drawings.

2.6 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
 - c. TRUEBRO, Inc.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

2.7 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- ### A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Josam Company.
2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

B. Water-Closet Supports:

1. Description: Combination carrier designed for accessible and standard mounting height of wall-mounting, water-closet-type fixture. Include single or double, vertical or horizontal, hub-and-spigot or hubless waste fitting as required for piping arrangement; faceplates; couplings with gaskets; feet; and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.

C. Urinal Supports:

1. Description: Type II, urinal carrier with hanger and bearing plates for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.

2.8 WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. TOTO USA, Inc.
2. Description Accessible, wall-mounting, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.

2.9 URINALS

A. Urinals:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.

- b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. TOTO USA, Inc.
2. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation. See schedule on Drawings.

2.10 LAVATORIES

A. Lavatories:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. TOTO USA, Inc.
2. Description: Accessible Counter-mounting, vitreous-china fixture.

2.11 INDIVIDUAL SHOWERS

A. Individual Showers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - b. Mustee, E. L. & Sons, Inc.
 - c. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
 - d. Swan Corporation (The).
2. Description: Factory-fabricated, accessible, cabinet type with faucet and receptor. See schedule on Drawings.
 - a. Size: 36 by 36 inches.
 - b. Material: Plastic, access.
 - c. Accessibility Options: Grab bar and bench.
 - d. Supplies: NPS 1/2 copper tubing.
 - e. Drain: Grid, NPS 2.

2.12 KITCHEN SINKS

A. Kitchen Sinks:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Just Manufacturing Company.
2. Description: One or Two-bowl, commercial, counter-mounting, enameled, cast-iron stainless-steel kitchen sink. See schedule on Drawings.

2.13 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basins:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - c. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - d. Precast Terrazzo Enterprises, Inc.
 - e. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
2. Description: Flush-to-wall, floor-mounting, precast terrazzo fixture with rim guard. See schedule on Drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.

- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
 - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
 - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
 - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- E. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- F. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- G. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- H. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- I. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- J. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- K. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- L. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- M. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- N. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- O. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- P. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
 - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.

- Q. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- R. Set service basins in leveling bed of cement grout. Grout is specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- S. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other related Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls.
- C. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
 - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
 - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 230130.51 - HVAC AIR-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components.
- B. This Section will only be required if HVAC systems are inadequately protected from contamination during construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Use the existing service openings, as required for proper cleaning, at various points of the HVAC system for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
- B. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006, "Guidelines for Constructing Service Openings in HVAC Systems" Section.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006.
- B. Remove visible surface contaminants and deposits from within the HVAC system.
- C. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned:
 - 1. Air devices for supply and return air.
 - 2. Ductwork:
 - a. Supply-air ducts, including turning vanes, to the air-handling unit.
 - b. Return-air ducts to the air-handling unit.
 - c. Exhaust-air ducts.
 - 3. Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Interior surfaces of the unit casing.
 - b. Coil surfaces compartment.
 - c. Condensate drain pans.

- d. Fans, fan blades, and fan housings.
- 4. Filters and filter housings.
- D. Collect debris removed during cleaning. Ensure that debris is not dispersed outside the HVAC system during the cleaning process.
- E. Particulate Collection:
 - 1. For particulate collection equipment, include adequate filtration to contain debris removed. Locate equipment downwind and away from all air intakes and other points of entry into the building.
 - 2. HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for particles sized 0.3 micrometer or larger shall be used where the particulate collection equipment is exhausting inside the building,
- F. Control odors and mist vapors during the cleaning and restoration process.
- G. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning. Restore them to their marked position on completion of cleaning.
- H. System components shall be cleaned so that all HVAC system components are visibly clean. On completion, all components must be returned to those settings recorded just prior to cleaning operations.
- I. Clean all air-distribution devices, registers, grilles, and diffusers.
- J. Clean visible surface contamination deposits according to NADCA ACR 2006 and the following:
 - 1. Clean air-handling units, airstream surfaces, components, condensate collectors, and drains.
 - 2. Ensure that a suitable operative drainage system is in place prior to beginning wash-down procedures.
 - 3. Clean evaporator coils, reheat coils, and other airstream components.
- K. Duct Systems:
 - 1. Create service openings in the HVAC system as necessary to accommodate cleaning.
 - 2. Mechanically clean duct systems specified to remove all visible contaminants so that the systems are capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
- L. Debris removed from the HVAC system shall be disposed of according to applicable Federal, state, and local requirements.
- M. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
 - 1. Source-Removal Cleaning Methods: The HVAC system shall be cleaned using source-removal mechanical cleaning methods designed to extract contaminants from within the HVAC system and to safely remove these contaminants from the facility. No cleaning

method, or combination of methods, shall be used that could potentially damage components of the HVAC system or negatively alter the integrity of the system.

- a. Use continuously operating vacuum-collection devices to keep each section being cleaned under negative pressure.
- b. Cleaning methods that require mechanical agitation devices to dislodge debris that is adhered to interior surfaces of HVAC system components shall be equipped to safely remove these devices. Cleaning methods shall not damage the integrity of HVAC system components or damage porous surface materials such as duct and plenum liners.

2. Cleaning Mineral-Fiber Insulation Components:

- a. Fibrous-glass thermal or acoustical insulation elements present in equipment or ductwork shall be thoroughly cleaned with HEPA vacuuming equipment while the HVAC system is under constant negative pressure and shall not be permitted to get wet according to NADCA ACR 2006.
- b. Cleaning methods used shall not cause damage to fibrous-glass components and will render the system capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
- c. Fibrous materials that become wet shall be discarded and replaced.

N. Coil Cleaning:

1. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.
2. See NADCA ACR 2006, "Coil Surface Cleaning" Section. Type 1, or Type 1 and Type 2, cleaning methods shall be used to render the coil visibly clean and capable of passing Coil Cleaning Verification (see applicable NADCA ACR 2006).
3. Coil drain pans shall be subject to NADCA ACR 2006, "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Verification." Ensure that condensate drain pans are operational.
4. Cleaning methods shall not cause any appreciable damage to, cause displacement of, inhibit heat transfer, or cause erosion of the coil surface or fins, and shall comply with coil manufacturer's written recommendations when available.
5. Rinse thoroughly with clean water to remove any latent residues.

3.3 RESTORATION

- A. Restore and repair HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and components according to NADCA ACR 2006, "Restoration and Repair of Mechanical Systems" Section.
- B. Comply with Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for duct materials, accessories, and hardware required for Work of this Section.
- C. Ensure that closures do not hinder or alter airflow.
- D. New closure materials, including insulation, shall match opened materials and shall have removable closure panels fitted with gaskets and fasteners.

END OF SECTION 230130.51

SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Record Documents, Maintenance Manuals, and General Provisions for mechanical work.
 - 2. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 3. Transition fittings.
 - 4. Dielectric fittings.
 - 5. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 6. Sleeves.
 - 7. Escutcheons.
 - 8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 9. Painting and finishing.
 - 10. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Dielectric fittings.
 - 2. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 3. Escutcheons.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Characteristics for Mechanical Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing by the engineer and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified without added cost to Project. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces.

1.6 FEES AND PERMITS

- A. Contractor shall apply and pay for all permits, inspections, reviews, etc. required by the authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. This shall include the cost of extending the natural gas service from the utility company main line to the building meter, setting the meter and regulator and all related utility company costs.
 - 2. The Contractor shall include in his/her Bid all system development or similarly named fee imposed by the serving utility company or governing entity (City, County, etc.).

1.7 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Prepare Record Documents in accordance with the requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 01, indicate the following installed conditions:
 - 1. Ductwork mains and branches, size and location, for both exterior and interior; locations of dampers and other control devices; filters and units requiring periodic maintenance or repair.
 - 2. Mains and branches of piping systems, with valves and control devices located and numbered, concealed unions located, and with items requiring maintenance located (ie. traps, strainers, tanks, etc.). Refer to Section 230553 "Identification for Plumbing and HVAC". Indicate actual inverts and horizontal locations of underground piping.
 - 3. Equipment locations (exposed and concealed) dimensioned from prominent building lines.
 - 4. Approved substitutions, Contract Modifications, and actual equipment and materials installed. Revise equipment schedules.
 - 5. Contract Modifications, actual equipment and materials installed.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare maintenance manuals in accordance with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 01. Assemble O & M Manuals as follows:
 - 1. Compile Operating and Maintenance Manuals for the mechanical systems and equipment. The manuals shall be provided to the Architect for approval complete and at one time, prior to requesting final payment. Partial or separate data will be returned for completion.
 - 2. Tabs shall be labeled and arranged as follows:

- a. Index: Furnish under the first tab an index of sections listing name of Section and Specification numbers.
 - b. Equipment Manufacturers: Furnish under the second tab a complete typed list of equipment suppliers and manufacturers representative including type of equipment, name, address and phone number. The company listed here should be the one which could furnish replacement parts and offer technical information about the equipment.
 - c. Valve Directory: Furnish under this tab a typed copy of the valve chart required.
 - d. Product Literature: Each tab, starting with the fourth shall contain the name of a Specification Section. Behind each tab shall be the previously submitted and approved Shop Drawing, factory published operation and maintenance instructions and parts lists.
3. Upon completion and approval of the manuals, using the manual, the Mechanical Contractor shall explain in detail and instruct the Owner's operating personnel in the correct operation and maintenance of the equipment.

1.9 GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR MECHANICAL WORK

- A. Interferences: Project design took into account potential interferences between trades (e.g. mechanical ductwork with piping or with electrical light fixtures), however, not every interference has been eliminated. It shall be the responsibility of the Bidder and potential Contractor to field verify all piping and duct routing, making allowances for existing beams, pipes, ducts, hangers, and other obstructions. Provide HVAC duct offsets and transitions as required maintaining duct aspect ratios within 10 percent of design. The cost associated with interferences shall be included in the Base Bid.
- B. Examination of Project Drawings:
 1. The Drawings (Plans, elevations, flow schematics, etc.) for the work are intended to convey Scope of Work and to indicate the general arrangements and locations of end-use equipment, systems, etc., and the approximate sizes thereof.
 2. The Contractor shall determine the exact location and mounting heights of equipment, rough-ins, and the exact routing and positioning of piping/ductwork equipment so as to best fit the layout of the job. Scaling of the Drawings will not be sufficient for determining these locations. Where job conditions require reasonable changes in indicated arrangements and locations, such changes shall be made, by the Contractor, at no additional cost to the Client.
 3. Because of the scale of the Drawings, certain basic items/materials and quantities thereof, (e.g. fittings, connectors, flanges, unions, pipe wells, couplings, hangers, sleeves, clamps, screws, hooks, inserts, pipe/duct mounted - meters, gages, sensors, etc.) may not be shown, but where such items are required by other sections of the Specifications or where they are required for proper installation of the Work, such items shall be furnished and installed and the cost thereof, reflected in the Base Bid.
 4. The determination of quantities of HVAC and plumbing end-use systems and equipment required shall be made by the Contractor from the Drawings. Interferences and quantities and locations of basic items/materials may not be indicated on the Drawings and will require field verification and determination by the Contractor.

5. The Contractor shall coordinate the location and method of support of the piping/duct systems with that of all installations under other Divisions and Sections of the Specifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8-inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300 psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- D. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300 psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Plastic or carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - 1. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw and polished chrome-plated.
- C. Split-Plate, Cast-Brass or Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, spring clips and chrome-plated finish.

- D. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Drawing Plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split plate, cast-brass or stamped steel type with polished chrome-plated finish.

- L. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 3. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- H. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- I. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.

- D. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- E. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- G. Insulation: Class F.
- H. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- I. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

GALLATIN VALLEY YMCA
COMMUNITY CENTER
BOZEMAN, MONTANA

GYMCA_PH1

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Equipment supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- ##### A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

L. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.

- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.

3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230549 - SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Seismic snubbers.
 - 2. Restraining braces and cables.
 - 3. Restrained isolators.
- B. It is the intent of this section to have the seismic bracing requirements designed by the approved seismic equipment manufacturer and installed by the mechanical contractor. The seismic manufacturer shall be responsible for the structural design of attachment hardware as required to attach snubbers to both the equipment and supporting structure. The manufacturer shall submit seismic shop drawings showing type and location of restraint devices as required to meet the code and performance requirements specified herein. The work under this section shall include all materials and labor necessary for complete execution of installation of seismic restraint assemblies as required per IBC code requirements.
- C. The requirements of this seismic restraint section are in addition to other requirements as specified for support and attachment of equipment and mechanical services.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Seismic Design Category as Defined in the IBC: D.
 - 2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: II.
 - a. Component Importance Factor: (1.0) for all ductwork, equipment and piping except (1.5) for Natural gas piping or other identified hazardous piping indicated.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: As required by IBC 2012 and ASCE 7-05 for specific component.

- c. Component Amplification Factor: As required by IBC 2012 and ASCE 7-05 for specific component.
3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): 0.599g.
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period: 0.284g.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
2. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints. Certification documents to be signed and sealed by a qualified Professional Engineer with at least 5 years experience in the design of seismic restraints.
2. Seismic Restraint Details: Detail submittal drawings of seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration anchors.
3. Seismic Shop Drawings: Floor Plans indicating seismic bracing locations and spacing for HVAC piping, ductwork and equipment.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic restraint products shall be of the same manufacturer.
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing

are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

- E. All piping and ductwork is to be restrained to meet code requirements. The seismic restraint manufacturer will provide documentation on maximum restraint spacing for various cable sizes and anchors. In addition, the seismic restraint manufacturer will provide support documentation containing adequate information to allow the installation contractor to make reasonable field modifications to suit special case conditions.
- F. Seismic Restraint Designers/Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide seismic design services and products by one of the following:
 - 1. Amber/Booth Co. Inc.
 - 2. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 3. Mason Industries.
 - 4. Vibro-Acoustics.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RESTRAINED ISOLATORS

- A. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
 - 1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
 - 2. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

- B. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
 - 1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
 - 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
 - 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch thick resilient cushion.
- C. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized steel cables pre-stretched with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- F. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- G. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- H. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- I. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- J. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive seismic control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on shop drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of all seismic restraint materials shall be installed according to the manufacturer's installation instructions and project shop drawings.
- B. Equipment Restraints:
 - 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure. Snubbers are not needed if restrained isolators are used.
 - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
 - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- C. Piping Restraints:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
 - 2. Space lateral supports and longitudinal supports as required for the site spectral response.
 - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.
- D. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

- G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- I. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
 - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
 - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

END OF SECTION 230549

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Pipe labels.
3. Duct labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - d. Champion America.
 - e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 - f. emedco.
 - g. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - h. LEM Products Inc.
 - i. Marking Services, Inc.
 - j. Seton Identification Products.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: White.
4. Background Color: Black.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
 2. Brady Corporation.
 3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 4. Carlton Industries, LP.
 5. Champion America.
 6. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 7. emedco.
 8. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 9. LEM Products Inc.
 10. Marking Services Inc.
 11. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover or cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 2. Lettering Size: At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.3 DUCT LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation.
 - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - 4. Champion America.
 - 5. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 - 6. emedco.
 - 7. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - 8. LEM Products Inc.
 - 9. Marking Sevices Inc.
 - 10. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: White.
- D. Background Color: Black.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- B. Certified TAB reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

- L. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:
 - a. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - b. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - c. Clean filters are installed.
 - d. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - e. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - f. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - g. Ceilings are installed.
 - h. Windows and doors are installed.
 - i. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance," NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230700.
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.

- d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 4. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

3.6 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.7 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Fan curves.
 2. Manufacturers' test data.
 3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - e. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 3. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - i. Return airflow in cfm.
 - j. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - k. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft..
 - h. Tube size in NPS.
 - i. Tube and fin materials.

- j. Circuiting arrangement.
 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
 - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
 - i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
 - j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- G. Gas-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Fuel type in input data.
 - g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
 - h. Ignition type.
 - i. Burner-control types.
 - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
 - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
 - m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
 - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
 - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
 - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
 - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
 - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
 - m. Motor voltage at each connection.

- n. Motor amperage for each phase.
 - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
- 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
- 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Duct size in inches.
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.
 - e. Dates of calibration.

3.8 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of commissioning authority.
- B. Commissioning authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
 3. If the second verification also fails, Architect may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230700 – PLUMBING AND HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pipe, duct, and equipment insulation.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data for each type of mechanical insulation identifying k-value, thickness, jackets (factory and field applied) and accessories.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire Performance Characteristics: Conform to the following characteristics for insulation including facings, cements, and adhesives, when tested according to ASTM E 84, by UL or other testing or inspecting organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. Label insulation with appropriate markings of testing laboratory.
 - 1. Interior Insulation: Flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less.
 - 2. Exterior Insulation: Flame spread rating of 75 or less and a smoke developed rating of 150 or less.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing and HVAC."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct installation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing of piping and duct systems.
- B. Thermal-hanger shield inserts are specified in "Hangers and Supports." Inserts shall be installed at the time of hanger installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Glass Fiber:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Knauf Fiberglass.
 - c. Manville/Schuller.
 - d. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corporation.
 - e. E-Insulation.
 2. Flexible Elastomeric Cellular:
 - a. Armacell LLC.
 - b. IMCOA Corporation.
 - c. Rubatex Corporation.

2.2 GLASS FIBER

- A. Material: Inorganic glass fibers, bonded with a thermosetting resin.
- B. Jacket: All-service, factory-applied, laminated glass-fiber-reinforced, flame-retardant kraft paper and aluminum foil skim backing having pressure sensitive self-sealing lap.
- C. Board: ASTM C 612, Class 2, semi-rigid jacketed board.
1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.23 average maximum, at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 2. Density: 3.0 pcf average maximum.
- D. Blanket: ASTM C 553, Type I, Class B-2, jacketed flexible blankets.
1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 at compressed thickness, at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 2. Density: 0.75lb/cu. ft.
- E. Preformed Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 547, Class 1, rigid pipe insulation, factory applied all-service jacket with self seal lap.
1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.26 average maximum at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 2. Density: 5 lb/cu. ft average maximum.
- F. Vapor Barrier Coating: Waterproof coating recommended by insulation manufacturer for outside service.

2.3 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR

- A. Material: Flexible expanded closed-cell structure with smooth skin on both sides.
 - 1. Tubular Materials: ASTM C 534, Type I.
- B. Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 average maximum at 75 deg F.
- C. Coating: Water based latex enamel coating recommended by insulation manufacturer.

2.4 ADHESIVES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation Adhesive: Solvent-based, contact adhesive recommended by insulation manufacturer. Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class 1.

2.5 FIELD APPLIED JACKETS

- A. PVC Fitting Covers: Factory-fabricated fitting covers manufactured from 30-mil-thick, high-impact, ultra-violet-resistant PVC.
 - 1. Mastic around fitting to pipe insulation.
- B. Aluminum Jacket: ASTM B 209, 3003 Alloy, H-14 temper, roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming to indicated sizes.
 - 1. Finish and Thickness: Smooth finish, 0.020-inch (0.51mm) thick for exterior applications.
 - 2. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3 mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - 3. Elbows: Preformed 45-degree and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

2.6 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

- A. Bands: 3/4-inch wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.007-inch thick.
 - 2. 1/8-inch by 1/8-inch Rapid Penetrating point screws for non vapor barrier application.
- B. Wire: 14 gauge nickel copper alloy, 16 gauge, soft-annealed stainless steel, or 160 gauge, soft-annealed galvanized steel.
- C. Cupped Head Weld Pins- 1-1/2 inch diameter cupped head, mild, annealed steel with zinc plating.
- D. Corner Angles: 28 gauge, 1 inch by 1 inch aluminum, adhered to 2 inch by 2 inch kraft paper.

- E. Anchor Pins: Capable of supporting 20 pounds each. Provide anchor pins and speed washers of sizes and diameters as recommended by the manufacturer for insulation type and thickness.
- F. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136 and UL listed.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- G. Foil/Skrim/Kraft Tape: Vapor barrier tape with rubber adhesive and UL listed and 25/20 rated.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 85 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 45 lbf/inch in width.

2.7 SEALING COMPOUNDS-MASTIC

- A. Vapor Barrier Compound: Water-based, fire-resistive composition.
 - 1. Water Vapor Permeance: 0.08 perm maximum.
 - 2. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to 180 deg F.
- B. Weatherproof Sealant: Flexible-elastomer-based, vapor-barrier sealant designed to seal metal joints.
 - 1. Water Vapor Permeance: 0.02 perm maximum.
 - 2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: Aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean, dry, and remove foreign materials such as rust, scale, and dirt.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each mechanical system.

- B. Select accessories compatible with materials suitable for the service. Select accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack the insulation or jacket in either the wet or dry state.
- C. Install vapor barriers on insulated pipes, ducts, and equipment where indicated and defined in insulation service chart.
- D. Apply insulation material, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- E. Seal joints and seams to maintain vapor barrier on insulation requiring a vapor barrier.
- F. Seal penetrations for hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections in insulation requiring a vapor barrier.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:
 - 1. Metal ducts with duct liner.
 - 2. Flexible connectors for ducts and pipes.
 - 3. Testing laboratory labels and stamps.
 - 4. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 5. Access panels and doors in air distribution systems.
 - 6. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings, except for plumbing fixtures for the disabled.
 - 7. Backflow prevention device.

3.3 PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Tightly butt longitudinal seams and end joints.
- B. Apply insulation continuously over fittings, valves, and specialties.
- C. Apply insulation with a minimum number of joints.
- D. Apply insulation with all service jackets as follows:
 - 1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with butt strips, at least 3 inches wide, and of same material as insulation jacket.
 - 3. Longitudinal Seams: Overlap seams at least 1-1/2-inches. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap.
 - 4. At penetrations in jackets for thermometers and pressure gages, fill and seal voids with mastic.
 - 5. Repair damaged insulation jackets, except metal jackets, by applying jacket material around damaged jacket. Extend patch at least 2 inches in both directions beyond damaged insulation jacket and around the entire circumference of the pipe.
- E. Roof Penetrations: Apply insulation for interior applications to a point even with the top of the roof flashing. Seal with vapor barrier coating. Apply insulation for exterior applications butted

tightly to interior insulation ends. Extend metal jacket for exterior insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing. Seal metal jacket to roof flashing with vapor barrier coating.

- F. Exterior Wall Penetrations: For penetrations of below grade exterior walls, terminate insulation flush with mechanical sleeve seal. Seal terminations with vapor barrier coating.
- G. Interior Walls and Partitions Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through walls and partitions, except fire-rated walls and partitions.
- H. Fire-Rated Walls and Partitions Penetrations: Terminate insulation at penetrations through fire-rated walls and partitions. Seal insulation ends with vapor barrier coating. Seal around penetration with firestopping or fire-resistant joint sealer.
- I. Floor Penetrations: Terminate insulation underside of floor assembly and at floor support at top of floor.
- J. Flanges, Fittings, and Valves - Interior Exposed and Concealed: Coat pipe insulation ends with mastic. Apply premolded, precut, or field-fabricated segments of insulation around flanges, unions, valves, and fittings. Make joints tight.
 - 1. Use same material and thickness as adjacent pipe insulation.
 - 2. Overlap nesting insulation by 2 inches or 1-pipe diameter, whichever is greater.
 - 3. Insulate elbows with blanket insulation inserts.
 - 4. Cover insulation, except for metal jacketed insulation, with PVC fitting covers and seal circumferential joints with butt strips.
- K. Hangers and Anchors: Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments. For vapor barrier application piping, extend insulation on anchor legs a minimum of 12 inches and taper and seal insulation ends.
 - 1. Install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer. Refer to "Hangers and Supports" for thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 2. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

3.4 BELOW GROUND PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. General: The following are additional requirements for insulation applied to piping installed below ground.
- B. Terminate insulation at anchor blocks.
- C. Apply insulation continuously through sleeves and manholes, except as specified above for exterior wall penetrations.

3.5 GLASS FIBER PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Seal exposed seams and joint ends, with mastic.

3.6 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Slip insulation on the pipe before making connections wherever possible. Seal joints with adhesive. Where the slip-on technique is not possible, use longitudinally precut insulation and apply to the pipe. Seal seams and joints with adhesive.
- B. Valves, Fittings, and Flanges: Cut insulation segments from pipe or sheet insulation. Bond to valve, fitting, and flange and seal joints with adhesive. Use prefabricated fittings if available.
 - 1. Miter cut materials to cover soldered elbows and tees.
 - 2. Fabricate sleeve fitting covers from flexible elastomeric cellular insulation for screwed valves, fittings, and specialties. Miter cut materials. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation.

3.7 EQUIPMENT INSULATION INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Ensure insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to the equipment and to fit contours of equipment. Stagger end joints.
- B. Secure sections of insulation in place with bands spaced at 12 inch centers.
- C. Protect exposed corners with corner angles under bands.
- D. Finishing: Insulation schedule for jacketing.

3.8 GLASS FIBER EQUIPMENT INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Secure insulation with anchor pins and speed washers.
- B. Space anchors at maximum intervals of 18 inches in both directions and not more than 3 inches from edges and joints.
- C. Install sheets of the largest manageable size.
- D. Apply full coverage of adhesive to the surfaces of the equipment and to the insulation.
- E. Butt insulation joints firmly together and apply adhesive to insulation edges at joints.
- F. Coat exterior installations with manufacturer's coating and install by manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.9 DUCT INSULATION

- A. Install block and board insulation as follows:

1. Adhesive and Band Attachment: Secure block and board insulation tight and smooth with at least 50 percent coverage of adhesive. Install bands spaced 12 inches apart. Protect insulation under bands and at exterior corners with metal corner angles. Fill joints, seams, and chipped edges with vapor barrier compound. Install metal corner angles on all outside corners to provide a neat finished appearance.
2. Speed Washers or Weld Pins Attachment: Secure insulation tight and smooth with speed washers or welded pin attachments. Space anchor pins 18 inches apart each way and 3 inches from insulation joints. Apply mastic to insulation in contact, open joints, breaks, punctures, and voids in insulation.

B. Blanket Insulation: Install tight and smooth. Secure to ducts having long sides or diameters as follows:

1. 24 Inches and Larger: Anchor pins spaced 12 inches apart each way.
2. Overlap joints 3 inches.
3. Seal joints, breaks, and punctures with vapor barrier tape, matching jacket material.

3.10 FIELD APPLIED JACKETS

A. Install metal jacket with 2 inch overlap at longitudinal and butt joints. Overlap longitudinal joints to shed water. Seal butt joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel draw bands 12 inches on center and at butt joints.

3.11 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply 2 coats of manufacturer's recommended protective coating to exposed insulation.

3.12 INSULATION SCHEDULES

A. General: Abbreviations used in the following schedules include:

1. Field-Applied Jackets: A - Aluminum.
2. Pipe Sizes: NPS - Nominal Pipe Size.
3. Materials: GF - Glass Fiber, FE - Flexible Elastomeric.

B. Pipe Insulation:

APPLICATION	TEMP (°F)	NOM. PIPE SIZE (IN.)	INSUL. MAT.	THICKNESS (IN.)	INSERTS OR SHIELDS NOTE 1	VAPOR BARR.	FIELD APP. JKT.
DOMESTIC COLD WATER	ALL	ALL	GF or FE	1	YES	YES	NONE

RAIN WATER AND OVERFLOW	ALL	ALL	GF or FE	1	NO	NO	NONE
DOMESTIC HOT WATER AND HW RECIRC.	ALL	< 1 1/2 1 1/2 AND UP	GF or FE	1 1 1/2	NO	NO	NONE
PLUMBING VENTS WITHIN 6 FT OF ROOF OUTLET	ALL	ALL	GF	1	NO	NO	NONE
REFRIGERANT SUCTION AND HOT GAS	ALL	BELOW 1 1 AND UP	FE FE	1/2 1	NO	NO	NONE

NOTE 1: INSERTS AND SHIELDS ARE IN SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING AND HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT AND SHALL BE PROVIDED BY THE INSULATION CONTRACTOR.

C. Equipment Insulation:

APPLICATION	TYPE	INSUL. MAT.	THICKNESS (IN.)	VAPOR BARRIER	FIELD APPLIED JACKET
ROOF DRAIN BOWLS AND PANS	BLANKET	GF	1-1/2	YES	NONE

D. Duct Systems:

APPLICATION	TYPE	INSUL. MAT.	THICKNESS (IN.)	VAPOR BARRIER	FIELD APPLIED JACKET
CONCEALED SUPPLY AND RETURN DUCTS	BLANKET	GF	2	YES	NONE
EXHAUST DUCTS FROM BACKDRAFT DAMPER TO OUTLET	BLANKET	GF	2	YES	NONE

DUCTWORK EXPOSED ON ROOFTOP	BOARD	GF	2	YES	A
--------------------------------	-------	----	---	-----	---

END OF SECTION 230700

SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Piping specialties.
 - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
 - 4. Valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 5 psig.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 2 psig but not more than 5 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of less than 0.5 psig.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Piping specialties.
2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
3. Dielectric fittings.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.

- d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
- e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

D. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

E. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.

2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

F. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: Forged brass.
3. Ball: Brass.
4. Stem: Brass; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Lee Brass Company.
 - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Plug: Bronze.
4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
7. Listing: Valves NPS 2 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.

4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Actaris.
 - b. American Meter Company.
 - c. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
 - d. Invensys.
 - e. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
 2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
 3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
 6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
 7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
 9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
 10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
 11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
 12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.
- C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Actaris.
 - b. American Meter Company.
 - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
 - d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
 - e. Invensys.
 - f. Maxitrol Company.
 - g. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
 2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
 3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.

6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig.

2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous material with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. Jomar International Ltd.
 - e. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.

3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
5. Prohibited Locations:
 - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.

2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

3.12 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
 - 2. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

3.13 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG.

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.

3.14 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 231123

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and refrigerant piping specialty.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- ##### A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- ##### B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- ##### A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

2.3 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction Lines: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 2. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 3. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for Plumbing and HVAC."
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230500.
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230500.

3.3 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing and HVAC."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.5 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
1. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 2. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 3. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 4. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealant and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- ##### A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- ##### B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- ##### C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
 - d. SpiralTech.
 - e. Lewis and Lambert.
 - f. Metco, Inc.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger Than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Hetos as indicated on plans.

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
 - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 - 2. Type: S.
 - 3. Grade: NS.
 - 4. Class: 25.
 - 5. Use: O.
 - 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
 - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
5. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
6. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
7. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
8. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.7 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Shower Exhaust: Aluminum.

- B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

- C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

- D. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

- a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
- 2. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.

- F. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

- a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
- a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
- a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.

- c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or Welded.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Flange connectors.
5. Turning vanes.
6. Duct-mounted access doors.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Flexible ducts.
9. Duct accessory hardware.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- ##### A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- ##### B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- ##### A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.

2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum ducts.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 3. Pottorff.
 - 4. Ruskin Company.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges.
- F. Blade Action: Parallel.
- G. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- H. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- I. Accessories:
 - 1. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 - 2. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - c. Pottorff.
 - d. Ruskin Company.
 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 4. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 7. Bearings:
 - a. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - c. Pottorff.
 - d. Ruskin Company.
 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.

- e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick extruded aluminum.
 - 6. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.
 - 7. Bearings:
 - a. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- C. Damper Hardware:
- 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
 - 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
 - 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 4. Pottorff.
 - 5. Ruskin Company.
- B. Blades:
- 1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
 - 2. Parallel-blade design.
 - 3. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- C. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
- 1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- D. Bearings:
- 1. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 - 2. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Aero-Dyne Sound Control Co.
 - 2. CL WARD & Family Inc.
 - 3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 4. Duro Dyne Inc.
 - 5. Elgen Manufacturing.
 - 6. Hardcast, Inc.
 - 7. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 8. SEMCO LLC.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall.

2.8 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 4. Pottorff.

- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 - 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
 - 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Duro Dyne Inc.
 - 4. Elgen Manufacturing.
 - 5. Hardcast, Inc.
 - 6. JP Lamborn Co.
 - 7. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 - 8. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 2. Flex-Tek Group.
 3. JP Lamborn Co.
 4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 5. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene or aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
 4. Insulation R-value: 6.0.
- C. Flexible Duct Connectors:
1. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
 2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

2.11 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.

- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. Downstream from control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 2. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 - 3. Upstream from turning vanes.
 - 4. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 5. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
- J. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for Plumbing and HVAC" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- L. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- M. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands or adhesive plus sheet metal screws.
- N. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
 - 2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 - 2. Carnes Company.
 - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 4. Loren Cook Company.
 - 5. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Accessories:
 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
- E. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 1. Overall Height: 12 inches.
 2. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 3. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

2.2 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 1. Panasonic.
- B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- D. Grille: Plastic, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.
- E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware.
- B. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for Plumbing and HVAC."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.

2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.
 5. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 6. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 7. Verify that manual and automatic volume control dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 8. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 9. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 10. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- C. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles and fixed-face registers and grilles.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Krueger.
2. Nailor Industries Inc.
3. Price Industries.
4. Titus.

- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

- C. Material: Steel.

- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.

- E. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches and 12 by 12 inches.

- F. Mounting: Surface and T-bar.

- G. Pattern: Adjustable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13

SECTION 233713.23 - AIR REGISTERS AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adjustable blade face registers.
2. Fixed face grilles.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REGISTERS

A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Krueger.
 - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - c. Price Industries.
 - d. Titus.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Anodized.
4. Damper Type: Extractor.

2.2 GRILLES

A. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Krueger.
 - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - c. Price Industries.
 - d. Titus.
2. Material: Steel and Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers and air extractors.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

SECTION 237416 - PACKAGED ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components and accessories:
 - 1. Casings.
 - 2. Fans.
 - 3. Motors.
 - 4. Coils.
 - 5. Refrigerant circuit components.
 - 6. Air filtration.
 - 7. Gas furnaces.
 - 8. Dampers.
 - 9. Electrical power connections.
 - 10. Controls.
 - 11. Accessories.
 - 12. Roof curbs.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AAON.
 - 2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
 - 3. Trane.

4. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.2 CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Exterior Casing Thickness: 0.052 inch thick.
- B. Supply-Air Fan:
- C. Relief (Exhaust)-Air Fan:
- D. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
- E. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
- F. Compressors:
 1. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: One.
 2. Compressor Speed: Single.
- G. Gas Furnace:
 1. Minimum Thermal Efficiency: 80 percent.
- H. Dampers:
 1. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect so dampers operate simultaneously.
 2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized.
- I. Filters:
 1. Thickness: 2 inches.
 2. Filter Type: Glass fiber, MERV 8.
- J. RTU Electrical Characteristics for Single-Point Connection:
 1. Voltage: 460.
 2. Phase: Poly.
 3. Hertz: 60.

2.3 CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.

- B. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with 2-inch foam insulation and seal moisture tight for R-13 performance.
- C. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
 - 1. Corrosion Protection: 2500 hours' salt spray test according to ASTM B 117.
- D. Inner Casing Fabrication Requirements:
 - 1. Inside Casing: G-90-coated galvanized steel, 0.034 inch thick.
- E. Plastic Condensate Drain Pans: Fabricated using rigid heavy plastic polymer, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1 for design and construction of drain pans.
- F. Condensate Drain Pans: Fabricated using stainless-steel sheet 0.025 inch thick, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1 for design and construction of drain pans.
 - 1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
 - 2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.
- G. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

2.4 COILS

- A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
 - 1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
- B. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
 - 1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.

2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
 - 1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
 - 2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
 - 3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
 - 4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
 - 5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.

6. Minimum off-time relay.
7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

2.6 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Minimum arrestance and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2.7 GAS FURNACE

- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3 and NFPA 54.
 1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- B. Burners: Stainless or aluminized steel.
 1. Fuel: Natural gas.
 2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
- C. Gas Valve Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.8 DAMPERS

- A. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.10 CONTROLS

- A. Basic Unit Controls:
 1. Control-voltage transformer.
 2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
 - a. Heat-cool-off switch.
 - b. Fan on-auto switch.
 - c. Fan-speed switch.
 - d. Automatic changeover.
 - e. Adjustable deadband.
 - f. Exposed set point.
 - g. Exposed indication.

- h. Degree F indication.
- i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
- j. Data entry and access port to input temperature and humidity set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature and humidity, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.

B. Electronic Controller:

1. Safety Control Operation:

- a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.

2. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of two programmable periods per day.

3. Unoccupied Period:

- a. Heating Setback: 16 deg F.
- b. Cooling Setback: System off.
- c. Override Operation: Two hours.

4. Supply Fan Operation:

- a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
- b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.

5. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:

- a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature and humidity. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure.
- b. Unoccupied Periods: Compressors off.

6. Gas Furnace Operation:

- a. Occupied Periods: Stage burner to maintain room temperature.
- b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.

7. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:

- a. Occupied Periods: Open to fixed minimum intake, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air is less than 75 deg F. Use mixed-air and outdoor-air temperature to adjust mixing dampers.
- b. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.

2.11 ACCESSORIES

- A. Factory- or field-installed, demand-controlled ventilation.

- B. Safeties:
 - 1. Smoke detector.
 - 2. Phase-loss protection.
 - 3. High and low pressure control.
- C. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
- D. Outdoor-air intake weather hood.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing with anchor bolts.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
 - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
 - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
- B. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and drain to roof.
- C. Where installing piping adjacent to RTUs, allow space for service and maintenance.
 - 1. Gas Piping: Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.

3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.11

SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Lennox Industries, Inc.; Lennox International.
 2. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
 3. Daikin AC.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

- A. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:
 1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
 2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
 3. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.

4. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
6. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends), and to direct water toward drain connection.
7. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
4. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
5. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 0 deg F.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- B. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports. Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

SECTION 238239.19 - WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes wall and ceiling heaters with fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. King Electric.
 - 2. Markel Products; TPI Corporation.
 - 3. QMark; Marley Engineered Products.

2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 CABINET

- A. Front Panel: Stamped-steel louver, with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.

- B. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.
- C. Surface-Mounted Cabinet Enclosure: Steel with finish to match cabinet.

2.4 COIL

- A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware, and limit controls for high-temperature protection.

2.5 FAN AND MOTOR

- A. Fan: Aluminum, directly connected to motor.
- B. Motor: Permanently lubricated. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

END OF SECTION 238239.19

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SCOPE

The provisions, terms and requirements of Division 1 and 2, the applicable Drawings and Technical Specifications herein shall apply to work under this Division.

This Work consists of, but is not necessarily limited to, the furnishing of all labor, equipment, appliances and materials and the performance of all operations in connection with the installation of all electrical work completed, in strict accordance with Specifications and/or Drawings, applicable codes, including incidental materials necessary and required for their completion.

"PROVIDE" = Furnished and installed complete. "OR EQUAL" = Or equal as approved to quote by Engineer, 10 days prior to Bid.

260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS

- A. Intent of Drawings: Drawings are partly diagrammatic and do not show exact location of conduit unless specifically dimensioned.
- B. Workmanship:
 - 1. Work shall be accomplished by workmen skilled in particular trade, in conformance with best practices and accepted standards.
 - 2. Work shall contribute to efficiency of operation, accessibility, maintenance and appearance. No part of installation shall interfere with operation of any other system or part of building.
 - 3. Non-satisfactory work shall be corrected at no additional expense to Owner.
- C. Responsibility:
 - 1. The Electrical Contractor is responsible for installation of satisfactory and complete work in accordance with the intent of Drawings and Specifications. Provide, at no extra cost, incidental items required for completion of work even though not specifically mentioned or indicated in Specifications or on Drawings.
 - 2. If, at any time, and in any case, change in location of conduit, outlets, fixtures, switches, panels, electrical equipment or associated components, etc., becomes necessary due to obstacles or installation of other trades, such required changes shall be made by Contractor at no extra cost.
 - 3. Conflicts discovered during construction shall be immediately called to the attention of the Engineer for decision. Do not proceed with installation in area of question until conflict has been fully resolved.
 - 4. Coordinate all electrical work with other trades to prevent unnecessary delays in the construction schedule.
 - 5. Excavation and backfill required by electrical installations shall be accomplished in accordance with Division 2 by this Contractor.
 - 6. Provide temporary electrical power and lighting for all trades that require service during the course of this Project. Provide temporary service and distribution as required.

Comply with the NFPA 70 and OSHA requirements. (Energy costs by General Contractor.)

- D. Guarantee-Warranty: This Contractor shall and hereby does warrant and guarantee:
1. That all work executed under this Section will be free from defects of materials and workmanship for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance of this work.
 2. The Contractor agrees to, at the Contractor's own expense, repair and replace all such defective materials and work and all other work damaged thereby which becomes defective during the term of warranty. Agreement does not include damages done by Owner.
- E. Permits, Tests, Codes and Standards:
1. Electrical Contractor to pay for all permits and fees in connection with this work.
 2. WORK SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE MOST RECENT EDITIONS OF ADOPTED LOCAL, STATE AND NATIONAL CODES AND ORDINANCES, THE STATE FIRE MARSHAL, AND UTILITY COMPANY REGULATIONS.
 3. Electrical work shall conform to National Electrical Codes, latest editions, as a minimum requirement.
 4. All material to conform with applicable standards.
- F. Discrepancies: Prior to submitting Bid, Contractor shall refer any apparent discrepancies or omissions to engineer for clarification. The more stringent provisions shall take precedence where codes, Specifications and Drawings differ with one another. The Contractor shall Bid the more expensive requirement, unless discrepancy is addressed by Addendum prior to Bid.
- G. Prior Approvals: All proposed substitutions shall be received by the Engineer 10 days prior to Bid. Priors received after 3 p.m. of the 10th day will be rejected. Supply technical data, photometrics and dimensional Drawings showing that substitutes are equal to product specified. Faxed prior approvals will not be accepted.
- H. Shop Drawing Submittals:
1. In addition to distribution requirements for submittals specified in Division 1 Section "Submittals," submit Drawings for final and official approval through the General Contractor as listed below. If the Authority Having Jurisdiction requires Shop Drawings to have a Registered Engineers Stamp Affixed, this shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor to acquire such stamp at Contactor's cost.
 - a. Engineer - 2 copies.
 - b. General Contractor - 2 copies.
 - c. Subcontractor - copies as required.

Additional copies may be required by individual Sections of these Specifications. Copies of price list sheets are not acceptable. Manufacturer's name and address must appear on each sheet. All copies shall be completely legible. Fax copies are unacceptable. All Shop Drawings not bound in Duo-Tang, Mead or equivalent folders will be rejected.

2. Shop Drawings shall include a completed specification sheet of all equipment along with fabrication, installation drawings, setting diagrams, schedules, patterns, templates and

similar Drawings. Installation drawings for fire alarm shall be done with a computer cadd program and include no other system. A basic floor plan in electronic format can be obtained from the Project Engineer.

I. Project Close-Out Record Documents:

1. Provide three full size sets, unless more are called for under Division 1 (one for Engineer and one for Owner). In addition to requirements called for under Division 1, indicate the following installed conditions:
 - a. Actual location of all electrical service gear/feeders, panel/motor/special equipment feeders, all major underground or underslab conduits, all conduit stubs for future use, any change in branch circuitry from Drawings, key junction boxes and pull boxes not indicated on Drawings, any control locations or indicator lights not shown on Drawings.
 - b. Addendum items, change order items and all changes made to Drawings from Bidding phase through to Project completion.
 - c. Actual equipment and materials installed. Where manufacturer and catalog number are indicated on Drawings, generally or in fixture or equipment schedules, change to reflect actual products installed.
 - d. Change service panel and branch panel breaker locations and schedules to reflect actual installed conditions.

J. Project Close-out Maintenance Manuals:

1. Prepare 3 copies, unless more are called for under Division 1 (one for Engineer, two for Owner). In addition to requirements under Division 1, provide heavy duty, durable 3-ring vinyl covered loose-leaf binder for each manual sized to receive 8.5 inch by 11 inch paper. Provide a clear plastic sleeve on the spine to hold labels and pockets in the cover to receive folded sheets. In manual, include all Shop Drawings, installation/operation/maintenance data furnished with electrical equipment, grounding tests when required, voice/data test reports, and letters from manufacturer's representatives that the fire alarm, sound and nurse call systems have been completed and tested to satisfy requirements/codes. List project name, date, and Contractor's name, address and telephone number. Include index sheet for each Specification Section indicating equipment, with supplier and supplier's telephone number. Provide tabbed dividers indicating major groupings of equipment.
2. Turn over to Owner all spare equipment and devices specified and shown.

K. Supporting Equipment:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, fasten electrical items and their supporting hardware securely to the building structure, including conduits, raceways, cables, busways, cabinets, panelboards, transformers, boxes, disconnect switches, and control components. Fasten by means of wood screws or screw-type nails on wood, toggle bolts on hollow masonry units, concrete inserts or expansion bolts on concrete or solid masonry, and machine screws, welded threaded studs, or spring-tension clamps on steel. Threaded studs driven by a power charge and provided with lock washers and nuts may be used instead of expansion bolts and machine or wood screws. Do not weld conduit, pipe straps, or items other than threaded studs to steel structures. In partitions of light steel construction, use

sheet metal screws. All device boxes in sheetrock walls will be tight before, during and after installation of sheetrock.

2. Provide supports for electrical items in accordance with NFPA 70 and all other applicable codes.
3. Contractor responsible for providing watertight conduit penetrations at all watertight walls, floors roofs and membranes. Contractor also responsible to maintain fire rating of walls, floors, roofs and membranes penetrated.
4. When applicable, center within insulation any electrical conduit routed in attic space. Provide sealing as per NFPA 70 300-7 for all conduits exposed to different temperatures.

L. Electrical Identification:

1. Apply circuit/control/item designation labels of engraved plastic laminate for disconnect switches, breakers, pushbuttons, pilot lights, FA duct detection, motor starters, panelboards and main control panel and similar systems.
2. Identify exposed or accessible raceway junction boxes with spray paint. Apply colors as follows:
 - a. Fire Alarm System: Red.
3. Identify power junction and pull boxes with permanent marker, indicating voltage and contained circuits.
4. Identify all 120 VAC and 208 VAC power receptacle cover plates with panel and circuit number utilizing a clear label with black designations. Designation example: L1-38.
5. Identify underground exterior electrical circuits by installation of continuous underground plastic marker, 6 - 8 inches below grade.

260519 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. All conductors shall be provided and installed in accordance with NFPA 70, NEMA, UL NETA ATS-1995, and all other applicable codes. All conductors shall be copper and installed in conduit, unless otherwise noted.
- C. Minimum conductor size for light and power shall be #12 AWG copper. Minimum conductor size for control wiring shall be #14 AWG copper unless noted otherwise on Drawings. #10 AWG and smaller shall be solid wire and #8 AWG and larger shall be stranded. Provide minimum #10 AWG for exterior lighting circuits.
- D. MC cable allowed, in concealed wall and ceiling spaces.
- E. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals, including screws and bolts, in accordance with manufacturer's published torque tightening values or as specified in UL Codes.

- F. Color code secondary service, feeder, and branch circuit conductors with factory applied color as follows:

<u>208Y/120 Volts</u>	<u>Phase</u>	<u>480Y/277 Volts</u>
Black	A	Brown
Red	B	Purple
Blue	C	Yellow
White	Neutral	Gray
Green	Ground	Green

260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Install separate insulated equipment grounding conductors for feeder and branch circuits in compliance with NFPA 70 Article 250.
- C. Provide #6 AWG minimum green insulated copper conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each telephone, alarm and communications system's terminal board, cabinet or equipment location.
- D. System Ground: Properly bond system neutral to system ground in the main service apparatus. All other neutral busses, bars, etc., must be isolated from ground. Establish the system ground as the grounding bus in main service apparatus by providing the proper ground bus in the main service apparatus and by providing the proper grounding conductor, installed in rigid steel conduit, bonded to the grounding bus and extended to the grounding point where the bond shall be made with the proper combination conduit/cable grounding clamp. Unless prohibited by Local Codes, the grounding point shall be established on the incoming water main, ufer ground and structural steel. Building metallic water piping system must be bonded, as required by codes, to the grounding bus in the main service apparatus. Carefully check the Drawings for additional grounding requirements and comply with NFPA 70 and all other applicable codes/standards.
- E. Grounding Electrode: Ufer Ground fabricated according to NFPA 70, Paragraph 250-52(A)(3), using a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG. Bond grounding conductor by Cadweld process to reinforce steel in at least 4 locations and to anchor bolts.

260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" section.
- B. Conduit Raceway:

1. Indoors, use the following, unless otherwise stated:
 - a. Concealed: EMT.
 - b. Exposed: EMT, IMC or RMC.
 - c. Connection to vibrating equipment: Flexible metal conduit.
 2. Outdoors, use the following, unless otherwise stated:
 - a. Concealed: RMC or IMC.
 - b. Exposed: RMC or IMC.
 - c. Underground: Schedule 40 PVC with Schedule 80 PVC fittings.
 - d. Connection to Vibrating Equipment: Liquid tight flexible metal conduit.
 3. ENT IS NOT ALLOWED.
 4. Conceal conduit and cable, unless otherwise noted; conduit is permitted to be exposed in equipment rooms. All conduits shall have insulated ground wire installed. Do not install conduit embedded in slabs. EMT fittings shall be steel, compression or set screw type. All raceways shall be installed and supported in accordance with NFPA 70 and applicable codes.
- C. Metal surface raceway shall be Wiremold 2100 Series. Install complete with matching boxes, fittings, and end caps, parallel or perpendicular to building construction. Field cut as required. Verify painted finish with Architect prior to ordering product. Transition to conceal conduit at new walls.
- D. Outlet Boxes:
1. Conform to UL 514A, "Metallic Boxes, Electrical," and UL 514B, "Fittings for Conduit and Outlet Boxes." Outlet boxes shall be metallic and installed flush in all areas, except mechanical rooms, above lay-in ceilings, or as otherwise indicated. Minimum size to be 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep. Boxes shall be of type, shape, size and depth to suit each location and application. All fittings shall be steel.
- E. Pull and Junction Boxes:
1. Comply with UL 50, "Electrical Cabinets and Boxes," for boxes over 100 cubic inches volume. Boxes shall have screwed or bolt-on covers, shall be suitable for the intended application and shall be labeled.
- F. All materials shall be UL listed, appropriate for intended application. Entire raceway system shall be in accordance with NFPA 70, ANSI, NEMA, UL, and all other applicable codes.

262716 - SERVICE ENTRANCE

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Provide Current Transformer (CT's) in switchboard in accordance with NFPA 70 and serving utility company's requirements. Current transformers provided by serving utility.

- C. Provide meter socket in accordance with serving utility company's requirements. Meter shall be provided by serving utility.
- D. Provide secondary service conduits from transformer pad to switchboard as called out on Drawings. Verify requirements and conduit size with serving utility.
- E. Trench, conduit, conductors and backfill for underground primary electrical service by serving utility.
- F. Provide concrete pad and concrete vault for utility transformer in accordance with utility company's requirements. See Division 3 Specifications for concrete applications.
- G. Install service-entrance equipment as indicated, in accordance with equipment manufacturer's written instructions, and with recognized industry practices, to ensure that service-entrance equipment fulfills requirements. Comply with applicable installation requirements of NFPA 70, UL, ANSI, IEEE, and NEMA standards.
- H. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals, including screws and bolts, in accordance with equipment manufacturer's published torque tightening values for equipment connectors. Where manufacturer's torquing requirements are not indicated, tighten connectors and terminals to comply with tightening torques specified in UL Standards 486A and B, and the NFPA 70.

262416 - PANELBOARDS

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Manufacturer: Siemens, Square-D, GE or Cutler Hammer.
- C. Load centers are not acceptable unless specifically noted.
- D. Panelboards shall have copper bus including neutral and ground bars. Breakers shall be bolt on type. MDP main breaker shall be factory installed and bussed. 480 volt breakers 1000 amp and larger shall be equipped with 30ma ground fault protection. All 3-pole breakers 30 amp and larger shall have minimum feature of a thermal magnetic adjustment feature. All new panelboards shall have a full panel front hinged cover with standard door for efficient access to panel breakers and wiring.
- E. Provide typed circuit schedules for existing panelboards where loads have changed and framed, typed circuit schedules for all new panelboards with identification of items controlled by each individual breaker. Indicate room numbers of items controlled or room name where appropriate for Owner's convenience.
- F. Front-connected, front-accessible switchboard: Fixed, individually mounted main circuit breaker; group mounted branch circuit breakers; integrally mounted, plug-in style, solid state, parallel connected surge protection device; steel enclosure, NEMA 250, Type 3R, factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface; barriers between adjacent switchboard sections; utility metering per FEC requirements; three phase, four wire aluminum bus; ground bus; neutral bus rated at 100 percent

of the ampacity of the phases buses; bus connections and appurtenances at full rating for future devices; UL labeled for use as service equipment.

- G. Contractor to provide an electrical arch flash hazard analysis and report in compliance with NFPA 70E. Provide print labels for all equipment identified in the system.

262726 - WIRING DEVICES

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers: Pass & Seymore, Bryant, GE, Hubbell, Leviton.
- C. Devices:
 - 1. General light switches shall be 20 amp, 120/277 volt AC rated and Industrial Grade.
 - 2. General receptacles shall be self grounding 5-20R and Industrial Grade. GFCI receptacles shall be 20 amp feed through type with two utilization points. Do not connect downstream devices to load side of GFCI.
 - 3. Dimmers shall be Lutron Nova Series, sized appropriately for load.
 - 4. General device color shall be ivory.
- D. Device Plates:
 - 1. Device plates shall have opening for device intended and shall be stainless steel. General device color shall be ivory.
 - 2. All device plates shall have a clear label with the panel and circuit number designation in black.
 - 3. Weatherproof receptacle covers shall be a corrosion resistant die cast metal, minimum 3 inch deep, flip cover with latch and with pad locking provisions.

262813 - OVER CURRENT PROTECTION DEVICES

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Fuses:
 - 1. Motor or combination motor/branch circuit: UL listed RK-5.
 - 2. Feeder Loads: UL listed RK-1.
 - 3. Plug fuses shall be dual element Type S with adapter.
 - 4. Manufacturer: Bussman, Gould, Littlefuse or Brush.

262816 - CIRCUIT AND MOTOR DISCONNECTS

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results for Electrical" Section.

- B. Manufacturer: Same as panelboard manufacturer.
- C. Disconnects shall be heavy duty type with Class R rejection feature when required to be fusible. Voltage rating shall be at or greater than the application voltage. Provide NEMA 3R enclosure for exterior locations. Service switches shall be UL listed for use as service equipment.

262913 - MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Manufacturer: Same as panelboard manufacturer.
- C. Unless scheduled otherwise, 3/4 horsepower or less single-phase motors shall have 1 HP rated manual toggle starters with thermal overload protection sized for the motor in accordance with NFPA 70. Provide pilot light for manual starters not in sight from motor. Units located at the exterior of the building shall be NEMA 3R rated.
- D. Starters shall be across-the-line magnetic type, combination starter/disconnect, FVNR, and HP rated, unless otherwise scheduled. Starter shall have resettable overload protection on all phases, constructed of one-piece Class 20 construction. Provide 120 volt control, H-O-A and interlocks where indicated on schedules. Provide two N/O auxiliary contacts. Units located at the building exterior shall be NEMA 3R rated.
- E. Where three phase monitors are specified on Drawing Schedules, provide Motor Saver Model 400 or Square-D Class 8430 DASV.
- F. All motor controllers shall be UL listed and installed in accordance with NFPA 70, NEMA, and manufacturer's recommendations.

265100 - LIGHTING

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Manufacturer, model, style, color, size, etc., as scheduled. If no color has been selected, provide fixture with the standard finish as published by the manufacturer. All fixtures to be supplied as complete, housing, sockets, lamp holders, internal working, wire guards, lens guards, diffusing materials or lenses, pendants, hangers, canopies, aligners, end caps, ballasts and emergency battery packs, plaster frames, recessing boxes, hold down clips, anchor bolts, etc. Install plumb and true, free of light leaks, warps, dents and other irregularities.
- C. Support for Recessed and semi-recessed Grid-type Fluorescent Fixtures:
 - 1. All lighting fixtures shall be positively attached to the suspended ceiling system by mechanical means as specified in the National Electric Code, Section 410-16 (c) unless independently supported. The attachment device, a minimum of two per fixture, shall have a capacity of 100 percent of the lighting fixture weight acting in any direction.

2. Pendant-hung lighting fixtures shall be supported directly from the structure above using No. 9-gage wire or an approved alternate support without using the ceiling suspension system for direct support.
 3. Lighting fixtures weighing less than 56 pounds shall have, in addition to the requirements outlined above, two No. 12-gage hangers connected from opposite corners of the fixture housing to the structure above. These wires may be slack.
 4. Lighting fixtures weighing 56 pounds or more shall be supported directly from the structure above by approved hangers.
- D. Support for Suspended Fixtures: Brace pendants and rods over 48 inches long to limit swinging. Support stem-mounted, single-unit, suspended fluorescent fixtures with twin-stem hangers. For continuous rows, use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of chassis, including one at each end.
- E. Surface-mounted light fixtures attached to a ceiling grid shall be attached with positive clamping devices that completely surround the supporting members. Safety wires shall be attached between the clamping device and the adjacent ceiling hanger or to the structure above.
- F. Lamps:
1. Manufacturers: GE, Phillips, Sylvania.
 2. Fluorescent lamps shall be provided as scheduled. Lamp wattage not to exceed manufacturer's recommendations. All lamps of a given type to be provided by the same manufacturer.
- G. Ballasts:
1. Manufacturers: GE, Osram/Sylvania, Advance and Universal.
 2. Fluorescent ballasts to be electronic, programmed start type with no more than 10 percent THD and UL listed.

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

270500 - TELE-DATA COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Manufacturers: Siemon, ICC, Leviton, Ortronics, AMP, Hubbell or Uniprise.
- C. Standards: Materials shall have NRTL Listing in compliance with UL910. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A and NFPA 70 for pathways and spaces, NECA 1, BICSI TDMM and NFPA 70 for equipment room installations, NECA 1, BICSI ITSIM chapter 6 and TIA/EIA-568 for cable installations, TIA/EIA 568 for copper connecting hardware, TIA/EIA-568 and TIA/EIA-604 for Fiber connecting hardware, TIA/EIA-J-STD-607A, BICSI TDMM and NFPA 70 for grounding, TIA/EIA-568B and TIA/EIA 526-14-A for testing, TIA/EIA-606-A Class 2 level, UL 969 and NFPA 70 for labeling.

- D. Telephone/Data Rooms: Where terminal boards are indicated on the construction documents, provide 3/4-inch thick interior grade plywood from floor to ceiling with fire retardant paint on all sides. Coordinate conduit from the Telephone Terminal Board (TTB) to exterior of building; size and route as dictated by serving utility company. Provide TTB communication grounding bus as required by serving utility, minimum #6 AWG in PVC conduit, extended, shortest and most direct route to ground bar at main switch. Terminate in ground bar installed on TTB. Provide minimum of two quad-plex power receptacle 6 inches above finished floor and additional as indicated on Drawings.
- E. Voice/Data Workstation Rough-Ins: Provide 4 inch square, 2-1/8-inch deep 1-gang rough-in with 3/4-inch conduit stubbed to ceiling space with a 90 degree bend and insulated throat bushing, unless otherwise stated.
- F. Workstation Outlet Assemblies: (Modules shall be color coded for service type, faceplate/jack color same as specified in the Wiring Devices Section).
1. Wall Mount Telephone Assembly: Stainless Steel wall mount plate with flat, Category 6, T568A/B, RJ45 module.
 2. Voice only Wall Jack Assemblies: (1) Angled Category 6, T568A/B, RJ45 module and (1) blank module in a modular style faceplate. Faceplate shall have clear view label covers.
 3. Data only Wall Jack Assemblies: (1) Angled Category 6, T568A/B, RJ45 module and (1) blank module in a modular style faceplate. Faceplate shall have clear view label covers.
 4. Combination Voice/Data Wall Jack Assemblies: (3) Angled Category 6, T568A/B, RJ45 modules and (3) blank modules in a modular style faceplate. Faceplate shall have clear view label covers.
 5. Coordinate final configuration of all wall jack assemblies with Owner's I.T. representative.
- G. Cables:
1. Horizontal Workstation Cabling: Category 6 unshielded twisted pair (UTP) cable, 4 pair, color coded, thermoplastic-insulated conductors in polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket. Use plenum rated cable in spaces used for air handling. Coordinate final cable requirements with Owner's I.T. representative.
- H. Racks: Provide free standing 84 inch high rack, 22 inches wide, with baked-polyester powder coat and cable managers at both sides. Workstation Patch Panels: Workstation patch panels shall be **Category 6** in 24 or 48 port sizes with rear wire management and S110 termination blocks. Telephone patch panels shall be **Category 6** in 24 or 48 port sizes with rear wire management and S110 termination blocks. All patch panels shall be separated in racks by front cable managers (1.75 inch for 24 port and 3.5 inch for 48 port). Provide 110 style, hinged punchdown blocks and 4-pair, **Category 6** cables between telephone patch panel and 110 blocks. Cross connecting by Telephone Company. All equipped shall be selected and sized to accommodate incoming workstation cables plus 20 percent spare capacity. Coordinate requirements for this work with Owner's I.T. representative.
- I. Workstation Wiring Installation:
1. Install cable without damaging conductors or jacket. Do not bend cable to a smaller radius than minimum recommended by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's

recommended pulling tensions. Pull cables simultaneously where more than one is being installed in the same raceway or at the same location. Use pulling compound or lubricant where necessary. Compound used must not damage conductor or insulation. Use pulling methods that will not damage cable or raceway, including fish tape, cable, rope, and wire-cable grips.

2. Wiring shall be a minimum of 48 inches from Transformers and motors \geq 5 HP and minimum of 5 inches from fluorescent light fixtures.
3. Wiring Support Methods:
 - a. UTP Wiring Method: Install wiring above accessible ceilings exposed and supported to structure with Erico Cable Cat or Bline 2 inch wide J hooks, supported to structure every 30 inches to 60 inches. Install all other wiring in EMT conduit concealed. Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces as indicated.
4. Wiring in Wire Closets and Cabinets: Install conductors parallel to and at right angles to walls. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Use wire distribution spools at points where cables are fanned or conductors turned. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted to terminal blocks. Label each terminal with designations approved in accordance with EIA/TIA Standards.
5. Conductor Terminations: Terminate conductors of cables on terminal blocks, patch panels and devices using tools recommended by manufacturer.

J. Identification:

1. Cable/Workstation Labels: Use a unique 5-syllable alphanumeric designation. First syllable is to identify and locate the wiring closet or equipment room where the cable originates. Second syllable is to identify the Rack number. Third syllable is to identify the patch panel or terminal blocks to which the cable terminates. Fourth and fifth syllables are to identify the patch panel port number. Example: J2A33 (wiring closet J, Rack 2, patch panel A, port number 33). Label cables within workstation outlet boxes, where accessible in cabinets or junction boxes, at rear of patch panels, at termination blocks and elsewhere as indicated. Place labels with 4 inches of cable termination point. Cable labels shall be vinyl or vinyl cloth, self adhesive, wraparound markers with preprinted numbers and letters. Label each workstation jack on workstation faceplate under clear view covers with preprinted label.
2. Patch Panel Labeling: Label each workstation panel with self adhesive preprinted single letter designation (A through Z). Label patch panels used as a patch to telephone cross connect blocks as "Telephone Patch." If more than one telephone patch panel, include letter designation. Example: Telephone Patch A.
3. Rack Labeling: Label each rack with engraved plastic laminate number designation. Example: Rack 1.
4. Wiring Closet/Equipment Room: Label wiring closet with engraved plastic laminate Letter designation. Place label minimum 6 feet above finished floor in visible location with minimum 2 inch high letters. Example: Wiring Closet J.
5. Cable Schedule/Map: Post at a prominent location in each equipment room. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with a rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Obtain printed floor plan from Engineer and

indicate each workstation jack, rack, and closet designations. Send copy to engineer and include with as-built manuals/Drawings.

K. Field Quality Control:

1. Testing Agency: Provide a qualified NRTL, BICSI certified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Perform tests and inspections as follows:
 - a. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 - b. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
 - c. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components. UTP Performance Tests: Test for each outlet and multi-outlet assembly. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:
 - 1) Wire map.
 - 2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
 - 3) Insertion loss.
 - 4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
 - 5) = [Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
 - 6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
 - 7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
 - 8) Return loss.
 - 9) Propagation delay.
 - 10) Delay skew.
3. Retesting: Correct deficiencies indicated by tests and completely retest work affected by such deficiencies. Verify that the total system meets the Specifications and complies with applicable standards. Contractor will be reimbursed for replacement of existing cable upon approval of engineer.
4. Report of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a written record of inspections, tests, and detailed test results in the form of a test log.
5. Tag all cables, terminal blocks, outlets, and other components for which tests have been satisfactorily completed.

L. Commissioning:

1. Acceptance: This is to be a certified EIA/TIA 568 Category 6 Data System. Submit system certificates prior to final acceptance.

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

283100 - FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM

- A. Submit Shop Drawings in accordance with the "Common Work Results" Section.
- B. Manufacturer: Simplex, Notifier, Edwards, or equal as approved.
- C. Compliance: Fire Alarm Design shall be compliance with International Building Codes, NFPA 72, NFPA 13 and NFPA 90A and applicable Government Agency Codes.
- D. Control panel to be Intelligent Addressable, with 150 percent power supply battery backup and integral DACT dialer. Install semi-flush.
- E. Manual Stations: Intelligent Addressable non-coded double action. Mount semiflush in recessed back boxes. Surface installations shall utilize surface box provided by fire alarm manufacturer and Wiremold 700 raceway. Box by Wiremold not acceptable.
- F. Horn/Strobe Units: Combination flush mount type with **beige** finish. Strobe units to be Xenon Strobe Type and shall comply with ADA requirements. Install in flush mounted back boxes 80 inches to bottom of device or 6 inches from ceiling to top of device, which ever is lower. Strobes shall be synchronized. Surface installations shall utilize surface box provided by fire alarm manufacturer and Wiremold 700. Box by Wiremold not acceptable.
- G. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors: Intelligent Addressable photoelectric smoke detector to employ light scattering principle of operation. Smoke detector shall alarm when smoke obscuration level in the detection chamber reaches the 3 percent per foot level. Do not mount smoke detectors any closer than 60 inches from HVAC air diffusers.
- H. Heat Detectors: Intelligent Addressable.
 - 1. Fixed temperature type, 135 deg F.
 - 2. Rate of rise type, 135 deg F.
- I. Duct Detection: Intelligent Addressable photoelectric with sampling tubes. (1) Locate in single or combined return air systems greater than 2000 cfm upstream of any filters, and (2) For return systems serving more than one floor and greater than 15,000 cfm, also locate in return air system at each story upstream of the connection between the return air riser and any air ducts or plenums. Comply with IMC Section 606 for locations; comply with NFPA 72 for installations. Provide remote test station on wall adjacent each unit. Provide fan shutdown relay within 3 feet of air handler starter integrated with FACP for shutdown of air handler under general alarm.
- J. Magnetic door holders shall be floor or wall mounted as indicated complete with matching door plate. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25 lbf holding force. Rating: 120 VAC.
- K. Elevator Recall: Initiated by general alarm. Recall sequence of operation shall be coordinated with authority having jurisdiction by elevator supplier. Smoke detectors in the elevator lobby, hoistway and machine room shall have isolated auxiliary contacts with 3/4 EMT to the elevator equipment panel. Contacts shall be utilized by elevator supplier/installer for general recall operations and recall for fire fighters service.

- L. Elevator Shutdown: Heat detectors in the elevator lobby, hoistway and machine room shall have isolated auxiliary contacts. Contacts shall be utilized to operate a shunt trip breaker feeding the elevator for shutdown before sprinkler heads release.
- M. Main valve supervisory switches shall be furnished by others and wired by Electrical Contractor.
- N. Flow and tamper switches shall be furnished and installed by others and wired by Electrical Contractor.
- O. Notification circuits shall be wired Class A. Initiation circuits shall be wired Class B. Conductors shall be minimum #16 awg FA conductor enclosed in EMT.
- P. Provide a letter of verification that the fire alarm system has been completed and tested in accordance with NFPA procedures by manufacturer's representative with an attached copy of the AHJ's acceptance report. The letter shall be included with As-Built manuals.
- Q. Training: Train Owner's personnel a minimum of 4 hours. Schedule one week in advance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Clearing and grubbing.
4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
5. Stripping and stockpiling rock.
6. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
7. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.

- C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01500 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Subsoil: Soil beneath the level of subgrade; soil beneath the topsoil layers of a naturally occurring soil profile, typified by less than 1 percent organic matter and few soil organisms.
- B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile. In undisturbed areas, surface soil is typically called "topsoil," but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil; the zone where plant roots grow.
- D. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil; the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of

subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.

- E. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- F. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- G. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
 - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or video recordings.
 - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plant designated to remain.
- B. Topsoil stripping and stockpiling program.
- C. Rock stockpiling program.
- D. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.
- E. Burning: Documentation of compliance with burning requirements and permitting of authorities having jurisdiction. Identify location(s) and conditions under which burning will be performed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Topsoil Stripping and Stockpiling Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement and protection of stockpiles.

- B. Rock Stockpiling Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement and protection of stockpiles.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
- D. Utility Locator Service: Notify Call Before You Dig for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place.
- F. Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones: Protect according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- G. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the soil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.
- B. Antirust Coating: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, self-curing, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI #23 (surface-tolerant, anticorrosive metal primer).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Verify that trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated have been flagged and that protection zones have been identified and enclosed according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

- A. Protect trees and plants remaining on-site according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- B. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.4 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
 - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.

- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed or abandoned in place.
 - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
 - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
- D. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others, unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- E. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.
- F. Removal of underground utilities is included in earthwork sections; in applicable fire suppression, plumbing, HVAC, electrical, communications, electronic safety and security, and utilities sections; and in Section 024116 "Structure Demolition" and Section 024119 "Selective Demolition."

3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
 - 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
 - 2. Grind down stumps and remove roots larger than 3 inches in diameter, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
 - 3. Use only hand methods or air spade for grubbing within protection zones.
 - 4. Chip removed tree branches and stockpile in areas approved by Architect.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil or other materials. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches.
 2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
 3. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
 4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

3.7 STOCKPILING ROCK

- A. Remove from construction area naturally formed rocks that measure more than 1 foot across in least dimension. Do not include excavated or crushed rock.
1. Separate or wash off non-rock materials from rocks, including soil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- B. Stockpile rock away from edge of excavations without intermixing with other materials. Cover to prevent windblown debris from accumulating among rocks.
1. Limit height of rock stockpiles to 36 inches.
 2. Do not stockpile rock within protection zones.
 3. Dispose of surplus rock. Surplus rock is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
 4. Stockpile surplus rock to allow later use by the Owner.

3.8 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

3.9 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Burning tree, shrub, and other vegetation waste is permitted according to burning requirements and permitting of authorities having jurisdiction. Control such burning to produce the least smoke or air pollutants and minimum annoyance to surrounding properties. Burning of other waste and debris is prohibited.
- C. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials, and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
2. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, turf and grasses, and plants.
3. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
4. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
5. Subbase course for concrete walks.
6. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
7. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
9. Excavating well hole to accommodate elevator-cylinder assembly.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
2. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
3. Section 312319 "Dewatering" for lowering and disposing of ground water during construction.
4. Section 315000 "Excavation Support and Protection" for shoring, bracing, and sheet piling of excavations.
5. Section 316329 "Drilled Concrete Piers and Shafts" for excavation of shafts and disposal of surplus excavated material.
6. Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading in turf and grass areas, including preparing and placing planting soil for turf areas.
7. Section 329300 "Plants" for finish grading in planting areas and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices for earth moving specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."

- B. Quantity allowances for earth moving are included in Section 012100 "Allowances."
- C. Rock Measurement: Volume of rock actually removed, measured in original position, but not to exceed the following. Unit prices for rock excavation include replacement with approved materials.
 - 1. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
 - 2. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
 - 3. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
 - 4. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
 - 5. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - 6. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
 - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
 - 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
 - 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and

pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock-excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:

1. Equipment for Footing, Trench, and Pit Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch- maximum-width, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,700 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,400 lbf with extra-long reach boom.
 2. Equipment for Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 230-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 47,992-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket.
- I. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material 3/4 cu. yd. or more in volume that exceed a standard penetration resistance of 100 blows/2 inches when tested by a geotechnical testing agency, according to ASTM D 1586.
- J. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- K. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- L. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- M. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct preexcavation conference at Project site.
1. Review methods and procedures related to earthmoving, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Coordination of Work with utility locator service.
 - c. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of tree- and plant-protection zones.
 - d. Extent of trenching by hand or with air spade.
 - e. Field quality control.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:

1. Geotextiles.
2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
3. Geofoam.
4. Warning tapes.

B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:

1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches.
2. Warning Tape: 12 inches long; of each color.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:

1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698.

C. Blasting plan approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Seismic survey report from seismic survey agency.

E. Preexcavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth-moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Blasting: Comply with applicable requirements in NFPA 495, "Explosive Materials Code," and prepare a blasting plan reporting the following:

1. Types of explosive and sizes of charge to be used in each area of rock removal, types of blasting mats, sequence of blasting operations, and procedures that will prevent damage to site improvements and structures on Project site and adjacent properties.
2. Seismographic monitoring during blasting operations.

B. Seismic Survey Agency: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, experienced in seismic surveys and blasting procedures to perform the following services:

1. Report types of explosive and sizes of charge to be used in each area of rock removal, types of blasting mats, sequence of blasting operations, and procedures that will prevent damage to site improvements and structures on Project site and adjacent properties.
2. Seismographic monitoring during blasting operations.

- C. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 and ASTM D 3740 for testing indicated.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth-moving operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify "Call Before You Dig" for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- D. Do not commence earth-moving operations until temporary site fencing and erosion- and sedimentation-control measures specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" and Section 311000 "Site Clearing" are in place.
- E. Do not commence earth-moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" are in place.
- F. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Foot traffic.
 - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 5. Impoundment of water.
 - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- H. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: See Geotechnical Report: Prepared by Down, 4/26/16.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: See Geotechnical Report: Prepared by Down, 4/26/16.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. See Geotechnical Report: Prepared by Down, 4/26/16.

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, flowable concrete material produced from the following:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type II.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
 - 3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33/C 33M, 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 - 4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C 869/C 869M.
 - 5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
 - 6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- B. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:
 - 1. As-Cast Unit Weight: 30 to 36 lb/cu. ft. at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C 138/C 138M.
 - 2. Compressive Strength: 80 psi, when tested according to ASTM C 495/C 495M.
- C. Produce conventional-weight, controlled low-strength material with 80-psi compressive strength when tested according to ASTM C 495/C 495M.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
 - 1. Red: Electric.
 - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 - 4. Blue: Water systems.

5. Green: Sewer systems.
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
1. Red: Electric.
 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 4. Blue: Water systems.
 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.
- B. Explosives: Obtain written permission from authorities having jurisdiction before bringing explosives to Project site or using explosives on Project site.
 1. Perform blasting without damaging adjacent structures, property, or site improvements.

2. Perform blasting without weakening the bearing capacity of rock subgrade and with the least-practicable disturbance to rock to remain.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.

1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
 - a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
 - b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
 - c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
 - d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
 - e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

B. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Architect. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.

1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; and soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
 - a. Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.
2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
 - a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
 - b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
 - c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
 - d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
 - e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
 - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
 - 2. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
 - 3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

- B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
 - 1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 - 2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Clearance: As indicated.

- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.

1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 3. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 4. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
- D. Trench Bottoms: Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
1. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
- E. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
 3. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.8 EXCAVATION FOR ELEVATOR CYLINDER

- A. Drill well hole plumb in elevator pit to accommodate installation of elevator-cylinder assembly. Coordinate with applicable requirements for diameter and tolerances in Section 142400 "Hydraulic Elevators."
- B. Provide well casing as necessary to retain walls of well hole.

3.9 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction if ruts occur, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.

2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
 3. Coordinate testing with Geotechnical Report.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.10 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Architect.

3.11 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.12 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 5. Removing trash and debris.
 6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.13 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.
- F. Initial Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact initial backfill of satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.
 - a. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- G. Final Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
- H. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.14 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
 - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
 - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.

5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.15 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.16 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.
5. Coordinate requirements with Geotechnical Report.

3.17 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:
 - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.18 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Section 334600 "Subdrainage."
- B. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
- C. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
 - 2. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- thick compacted layers to final subgrade.

3.19 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

- A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice. Coordinate with Geotechnical Report.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
 - 1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 - 2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Shape subbase course and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.

4. Place subbase course and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 5. Place subbase course and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 6. Compact subbase course and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
 7. Coordinate requirement with Geotechnical Report.
- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.20 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 2. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.21 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
 2. Determine that fill material classification and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
 3. Determine, during placement and compaction, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
 4. Per requirements of Geotechnical Report.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2937, and ASTM D 6938, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab but in no case fewer than three tests.
 - 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length but no fewer than two tests.
 - 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length but no fewer than two tests.
- F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.22 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
 - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.23 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

- B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000